

**Oracle® Communications**  
**Diameter Signaling Router 7.0/7.1**  
Software Installation and Configuration Procedure 2/2  
**E58954 Revision 04**

December 2015

**ORACLE®**

**Note:** This document represents the 2<sup>nd</sup> part of the DSR 7.0/7.1 Installation Process.  
Prior to executing this document, make sure that the 1<sup>st</sup> part was fully executed:

- **DSR 7.0 Installs:** Use document [3] as Part 1
- **DSR 7.1 Installs:** Use document [26] as Part 1

## Table of Contents

TABLE OF CONTENTS .....	3
LIST OF PROCEDURES .....	5
TABLES AND FIGURES .....	7
<b>1.0 INTRODUCTION.....</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>1.1 PURPOSE AND SCOPE.....</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>1.2 REFERENCES .....</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>1.3 ACRONYMS .....</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>1.4 TERMINOLOGY .....</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>2.0 GENERAL DESCRIPTION .....</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>3.0 INSTALL OVERVIEW .....</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>3.1 REQUIRED MATERIALS .....</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>3.2 INSTALLATION OVERVIEW.....</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>3.2.1 Installation Strategy.....</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>3.2.2 SNMP Configuration.....</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>3.2.3 Installation Procedures .....</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>3.2 OPTIONAL FEATURES.....</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>4.0 SOFTWARE INSTALLATION PROCEDURE .....</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>4.1 CONFIGURE RMS TVOE HOSTS .....</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>4.2 CONFIGURE BLADE TVOE HOSTS .....</b>	<b>41</b>
<b>4.3 CREATE VIRTUAL MACHINES FOR APPLICATIONS .....</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>4.4 INSTALL APPLICATION SOFTWARE ON SERVERS .....</b>	<b>61</b>
<b>4.5 APPLICATION CONFIGURATION: NOAMS .....</b>	<b>66</b>
<b>4.6 APPLICATION CONFIGURATION: NETBACKUP CLIENT INSTALLATION (OPTIONAL).....</b>	<b>86</b>
<b>4.7 APPLICATION CONFIGURATION: DISASTER RECOVERY NOAM (OPTIONAL) .....</b>	<b>87</b>
<b>4.8 APPLICATION CONFIGURATION: SOAMS .....</b>	<b>97</b>
<b>4.9 APPLICATION CONFIGURATION: ACTIVATE PCA (PCA ONLY) .....</b>	<b>111</b>
<b>4.10 APPLICATION CONFIGURATION: MPs .....</b>	<b>112</b>
<b>4.11 APPLICATION CONFIGURATION: SIGNALING NETWORK .....</b>	<b>134</b>
<b>4.12 APPLICATION CONFIGURATION: SNMP (OPTIONAL) .....</b>	<b>157</b>
<b>4.13 APPLICATION CONFIGURATION: IP FRONT END (IPFE) .....</b>	<b>162</b>
<b>4.14 IDIH INSTALLATION AND CONFIGURATION (DSR 7.1-OPTIONAL).....</b>	<b>171</b>
<b>4.14.1 IDIH Installation .....</b>	<b>171</b>
<b>4.14.2 Post IDIH Installation Configuration.....</b>	<b>176</b>
<b>4.15 POST-INSTALL ACTIVITIES .....</b>	<b>193</b>
<b>APPENDIX A: SAMPLE NETWORK ELEMENT AND HARDWARE PROFILES .....</b>	<b>205</b>
<b>APPENDIX B: CONFIGURING FOR TVOE ILO ACCESS .....</b>	<b>208</b>
<b>APPENDIX C: TVOE ILO ACCESS .....</b>	<b>210</b>
<b>APPENDIX D: TVOE ILO4 ACCESS .....</b>	<b>212</b>
<b>APPENDIX E: CHANGING THE TVOE ILO ADDRESS .....</b>	<b>214</b>

<b>APPENDIX F: PMAC/NOAM/SOAM CONSOLE ILO ACCESS .....</b>	<b>216</b>
<b>APPENDIX G: ACCESSING THE NOAM GUI USING SSH TUNNELING WITH PUTTY.....</b>	<b>218</b>
<b>APPENDIX H: ACCESSING THE NOAM GUI USING SSH TUNNELING WITH OPENSSH FOR WINDOWS.....</b>	<b>221</b>
<b>APPENDIX I: LIST OF FREQUENTLY USED TIME ZONES .....</b>	<b>223</b>
<b>APPENDIX J: APPLICATION NETBACKUP CLIENT INSTALLATION PROCEDURES.....</b>	<b>224</b>
<i>NETBACKUP CLIENT INSTALL USING PLATCFG .....</i>	<i>224</i>
<i>NETBACKUP CLIENT INSTALL/UPGRADE WITH NBAUTOINSTALL.....</i>	<i>231</i>
<i>CREATE NETBACKUP CLIENT CONFIG FILE.....</i>	<i>233</i>
<i>OPEN PORTS FOR NETBACKUP CLIENT SOFTWARE.....</i>	<i>235</i>
<b>APPENDIX K: MULTI-SITE FEATURE ACTIVATION (DSR 7.0) .....</b>	<b>236</b>
<b>APPENDIX L: IDIH FAST DEPLOYMENT CONFIGURATION .....</b>	<b>237</b>
<b>APPENDIX M: IDIH EXTERNAL DRIVE REMOVAL.....</b>	<b>241</b>
<b>APPENDIX N: DISABLE/ENABLE DTLS.....</b>	<b>246</b>
<b>APPENDIX O: MY ORACLE SUPPORT (MOS) .....</b>	<b>246</b>

## List of Procedures

Procedure 1 Continue TVOE Configuration on First RMS.....	21
Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s).....	27
Procedure 3 Configure TVOE on Server Blades.....	41
Procedure 4 Load Application and TPD ISO onto PMAC Server.....	50
Procedure 5 Create NOAM Guest VMs.....	53
Procedure 6 Create SOAM Guest VMs .....	57
Procedure 7 IPM Blades and VMs .....	61
Procedure 8 Install the Application Software on Blades .....	63
Procedure 9 Configure the First NOAM NE and Server.....	66
Procedure 10 Configure the NOAM Server Group .....	73
Procedure 11 Configure the Second NOAM Server.....	78
Procedure 12 Complete NOAM Server Group Configuration .....	82
Procedure 13 Install NetBackup Client (Optional) .....	86
Procedure 14 NOAM Configuration for DR Site (Optional) .....	87
Procedure 15 Pairing for DR-NOAM site (Optional) .....	93
Procedure 16 Configure SOAM NE.....	97
Procedure 17 Configure the SOAM Servers.....	99
Procedure 18 Configure the SOAM Server Group.....	104
Procedure 19 Activate PCA (PCA Only).....	111
Procedure 20 Configure MP Blade Servers.....	112
Procedure 21 Configure Places and Assign MP Servers to Places (PCA ONLY).....	121
Procedure 22 Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s).....	124
Procedure 23 Configure the Signaling Networks .....	134
Procedure 24 Additional Servers to Network Mapping (PCA Only) .....	135
Procedure 25 Configure the Signaling Devices.....	140
Procedure 26 Configure DSCP Values for Outgoing Traffic (Optional).....	148
Procedure 27 Configure the Signaling Network Routes.....	151
Procedure 28 Add VIP for Signaling networks (Active/Standby Configurations Only) .....	155
Procedure 29 Configure SNMP Trap Receiver(s) (Optional) .....	157
Procedure 30 IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration (Optional) .....	162
Procedure 31 IDIH Configuration (DSR 7.1-Optional).....	171
Procedure 32 Configure DSR Reference Data Synchronization for IDIH (DSR 7.1-Optional) ..	176
Procedure 33 IDIH Configuration: Configuring the SSO Domain (DSR 7.1-Optional) .....	178
Procedure 34 IDIH Configuration: Configure IDIH in the DSR (DSR 7.1-Optional).....	184
Procedure 35 IDIH Configuration: Configure Mail Server-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional).....	187
Procedure 36 IDIH Configuration: Configure SNMP Management Server-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional) .....	189
Procedure 37 IDIH Configuration: Change Network Interface-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional) ....	191
Procedure 38 IDIH Configuration: Backup the upgrade and Disaster Recovery FDC File-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional).....	192

Procedure 39 Activate Optional Features .....	193
Procedure 40 Configure ComAgent Connections .....	195
Procedure 41 Backup TVOE Configuration .....	195
Procedure 42 Backup PMAC Application .....	197
Procedure 43 NOAM Database Backup .....	200
Procedure 44 SOAM Database Backup .....	202
Appendix B 1 Connecting to the TVOE iLO .....	208
Appendix C 1 Accessing the TVOE iLO .....	210
Appendix D 1 TVOE iLO4 GUI Access .....	212
Appendix E 1 Changing the TVOE iLO Address .....	214
Appendix F 1 PMAC/NOAM/SOAM Console iLO Access .....	216
Appendix G 1 Accessing the NOAM GUI using SSH Tunneling with Putty .....	218
Appendix H 1 Accessing the NOAM GUI using SSH Tunneling with OpenSSH for Windows ..	221
Appendix J 1 Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg) .....	224
Appendix J 2 Application NetBackup Client Installation (NBAUTOINSTALL) .....	231
Appendix J 3 Create NetBackup Client Config File .....	233
Appendix J 4 Open ports for NetBackup Client Software .....	235
Appendix K 1 Mult-Site Feature Activation (DSR 7.0) .....	236
Appendix M 1 IDIH External Drive Removal .....	241
Appendix N 1 Disable DTLS (DSR 7.1 Only).....	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>
Appendix N 2 Enable DTLS (DSR 7.1 Only).....	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>

## Tables and Figures

TABLE 1 ACRONYMS .....	9
FIGURE 1 EXAMPLE OF AN INSTRUCTION THAT INDICATES THE SERVER TO WHICH IT APPLIES .....	10
TABLE 2 TERMINOLOGY .....	10
FIGURE 2 EXAMPLE OF INITIAL APPLICATION INSTALLATION PATH .....	13
FIGURE 3 DSR INSTALLATION: HIGH LEVEL SEQUENCE .....	15
FIGURE 4 DSR SINGLE SITE INSTALLATION PROCEDURE MAP .....	16
FIGURE 5 EXAMPLE NETWORK ELEMENT XML FILE .....	205
FIGURE 6 EXAMPLE SERVER HARDWARE PROFILE XML-HP C-CLASS BLADE.....	206
FIGURE 7 EXAMPLE SERVER HARDWARE PROFILE XML- VIRTUAL GUEST ON TVOE.....	207
TABLE 4 TIME ZONES .....	223

## 1.0 INTRODUCTION

### 1.1 Purpose and Scope

This document describes the application-related installation procedures for an HP C-class Diameter Signaling Router 7.0, 7.1 systems.

This document assumes that platform-related configuration has already been done. Before executing this document, please ensure that all procedures from [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1) have already been performed successfully.

The audience for this document includes Oracle customers as well as these groups: Software System, Product Verification, Documentation, and Customer Service including Software Operations and First Office Application.

## 1.2 References

- [1] Communication Agent Configuration Guide, E58922
- [2] DSR 7.0 PCA Activation and Configuration, E58667
- [3] DSR 6.x/7.0 Base Hardware and Software Installation, E57789
- [4] Charging Proxy Application (CPA) & Offline Charging Feature Activation Procedure, E58663
- [5] DSR Meta Administration Feature Activation Procedure, E58661
- [6] DSR Full Address Based Resolution (FABR) Feature Activation Procedure, E58664
- [7] DSR Range Based Address Resolution (RBAR) Feature Activation Procedure, E58664
- [8] SDS SW Installation and Configuration Guide, E57487
- [9] MAP-Diameter IWF Feature Activation Procedure. E58666
- [10] Operations, Administration, and Maintenance (OAM) User's Guide, E53463
- [11] Communication Agent User's Guide, E53464
- [12] Policy DRA User's Guide, E53472
- [13] Diameter User's Guide, E53467
- [14] Mediation User's Guide, E53468
- [15] Range Based Address Resolution (RBAR) User's Guide, E53469
- [16] Full Address Based Resolution (FABR) User's Guide, E53470
- [17] Charging Proxy Application (CPA) and Offline Charging Solution User's Guide, E53471
- [18] IP Front End (IPFE) User's Guide, E53473-01
- [19] DSR Alarms, KPIs, and Measurements Reference, E53474
- [20] Diameter Common User's Guide, E53480
- [21] Diameter Administrator's Guide, E53475
- [22] Map-Diameter IWF User's Guide, E53476
- [23] Gateway Location Application (GLA) User's Guide, E58659
- [24] DSR IPv6 Migration Guide, E57517
- [25] IDIH 7.0 Installation Procedure, E56374
- [26] DSR 7.1 Base Hardware and Software Installation, E53488-01
- [27] DSR GLA Feature Activation Procedure, E58659
- [28] DSR 7.1 PCA Activation and Configuration, E63560
- [29] DSR DTLS Feature Activation Procedure, E67867

## 1.3 Acronyms

An alphabetized list of acronyms used in the document

**Table 1 Acronyms**

Acronym	Definition
<b>BIOS</b>	Basic Input Output System
<b>CD</b>	Compact Disk
<b>DVD</b>	Digital Versatile Disc
<b>EBIPA</b>	Enclosure Bay IP Addressing
<b>FRU</b>	Field Replaceable Unit
<b>HP c-Class</b>	HP blade server offering
<b>iLO</b>	Integrated Lights Out manager
<b>IPM</b>	Initial Product Manufacture – the process of installing TPD on a hardware platform
<b>MSA</b>	Modular Smart Array
<b>NB</b>	NetBackup
<b>OA</b>	HP Onboard Administrator
<b>OS</b>	Operating System (e.g. TPD)
<b>RMS</b>	Rack Mounted Server
<b>PMAC</b>	Platform Management & Configuration
<b>SAN</b>	Storage Area Network
<b>SFTP</b>	Secure File Transfer Protocol
<b>SNMP</b>	Simple Network Management Protocol
<b>TPD</b>	Tekelec Platform Distribution
<b>TVOE</b>	Tekelec Virtual Operating Environment
<b>VM</b>	Virtual Machine
<b>VSP</b>	Virtual Serial Port
<b>IPFE</b>	IP Front End
<b>PCA</b>	Policy and Charging Application
<b>IDIH</b>	Integrated Diameter Intelligence Hub

## 1.4 Terminology

Multiple server types may be involved with the procedures in this manual. Therefore, most steps in the written procedures begin with the name or type of server to which the step applies. For example:

*Each step has a checkbox for every command within the step that the technician should check to keep track of the progress of the procedure.*

*The title box describes the operations to be performed during that step.*

*Each command that the technician is to enter is in 10 point bold Courier font.*

5	<b>ServerX:</b> Connect to the console of the server	Establish a connection to the server using cu on the terminal server/console.
<input type="checkbox"/>		<b>\$ cu -l /dev/ttys7</b>

Figure 1 Example of an instruction that indicates the server to which it applies

Table 2 Terminology

<b>Management Server</b>	HP ProLiant DL360/ DL380 deployed to run TVOE and host a virtualized PMAC application. Can also host a virtualized NOAM or IDIH. It is also used to configure the Aggregation switches (via the PM&C) and to serve other configuration purposes.
<b>PMAC Application</b>	PMAC is an application that provides platform-level management functionality for HP G6/G8/G9 system, such as the capability to manage and provision platform components of the system so it can host applications.
<b>Site</b>	Applicable for various applications, a Site is type of "Place". A Place is configured object that allows servers to be associated with a physical location.  A Site place allows servers to be associated with a physical site. For example, Sites may be configured for Atlanta, Charlotte, and Chicago. Every server is associated with exactly one Site when the server is configured.  For the Policy & Charging DRA application, when configuring a Site only put DA-MPs and SBR MP servers in the site. Do not add NOAM, SOAM or IPFE MPs to a Site

<b>Place Association</b>	Applicable for various applications, a “Place Association” is a configured object that allows Places to be grouped together. A Place can be a member of more than one Place Association.  The Policy & Charging DRA application defines two Place Association Types: Policy Binding Region and Policy & Charging Mated Sites.
<b>Two Site Redundancy</b>	Two Site Redundancy is a data durability configuration in which Policy and Charging data is unaffected by the loss of one site in a Policy & Charging Mated Sites Place Association containing two sites.  Two Site Redundancy is a feature provided by Server Group configuration. This feature provides geographic redundancy. Some Server Groups can be configured with servers located in two geographically separate Sites(locations). This feature will ensure that there is always a functioning Active server in a Server Group even if all the servers in a single site fail.
<b>Three Site Redundancy</b>	Three Site Redundancy is a data durability configuration in which Policy and Charging data is unaffected by the loss of two sites in a Policy & Charging Mated Sites Place Association containing three sites.  Three Site Redundancy is a feature provided by Server Groups configuration. This feature provides geographic redundancy. Some Server Groups can be configured with servers located in three geographically separate Sites(locations). This feature will ensure that there is always a functioning Active server in a Server Group even if all the servers in two sites fail.
<b>Policy &amp; Charging SBR Server Group Redundancy</b>	The Policy and Charging application will use SBR Server Groups to store the application data. The SBR Server Groups will support both Two and Three Site Redundancy. The Server Group Function name is “Policy & Charging SBR”.
<b>Server Group Primary Site</b>	A Server Group Primary Site is a term used to represent the principle location within a SOAM or SBR Server Group. SOAM and SBR Server groups are intended to span several Sites(Places). For the Policy & Charging DRA application, these Sites(Places) are all configured within a single “Policy and Charging Mated Sites” Place Association.  The Primary Site may be in a different Site(Place) for each configured SOAM or SBR Server Group .  A Primary Site is described as the location in which the Active and Standby servers to reside, however there cannot be any Preferred Spare servers within this location. All SOAM and SBR Server Groups will have a Primary Site.

<b>Server Group Secondary Site</b>	<p>A Server Group Secondary Site is a term used to represent location in addition to the Primary Site within a SOAM or SBR Server Group. SOAM and SBR Server groups are intended to span several Sites(Places). For the Policy &amp; Charging DRA application, these Sites(Places) are all configured within a single “Policy and Charging Mated Sites” Place Association.</p> <p>The Secondary Site may be in a different Site(Place) for each configured SOAM or SBR Server Group .</p> <p>A Secondary Site is described as the location in which only Preferred Spare servers reside. The Active and Standby servers cannot reside within this location. If Two or Three Site Redundancy is wanted, a Secondary Site is required for all SOAM and SBR Server Groups.</p>
<b>Server Group Tertiary Site</b>	<p>A Server Group Tertiary Site is a term used to represent location in addition to the Primary &amp; Secondary Sites within a SOAM or SBR Server Group. SOAM and SBR Server groups are intended to span several Sites(Places). For the Policy &amp; Charging DRA application, these Sites(Places) are all configured within a single “Policy and Charging Mated Sites” Place Association.</p> <p>The Tertiary Site may be in a different Site(Place) for each configured SOAM or SBR Server Group .</p> <p>A Tertiary Site is described as the location in which only Preferred Spare servers reside. The Active and Standby servers cannot reside within this location. A Tertiary Site only applies if Three Site Redundancy is wanted for SOAM and SBR Server Groups.</p>
<b>Software Centric</b>	<p>The business practice of delivering an Oracle software product, while relying upon the customer to procure the requisite hardware components. Oracle provides the hardware specifications, but does not provide the hardware, and is not responsible for hardware installation, configuration, or maintenance.</p>
<b>Enablement</b>	<p>The business practice of providing support services (hardware, software, documentation, etc) that enable a 3rd party entity to install, configuration, and maintain Oracle products for Oracle customers.</p>

## 2.0 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

This document defines the steps to execute the initial installation of the Diameter Signaling Router (DSR) 7.0/7.1 application on new HP C-Class Hardware.

DSR 7.0/7.1 installation paths are shown in the figures below. The general timeline for all processes to perform a software installation/configuration and upgrade is also included below.

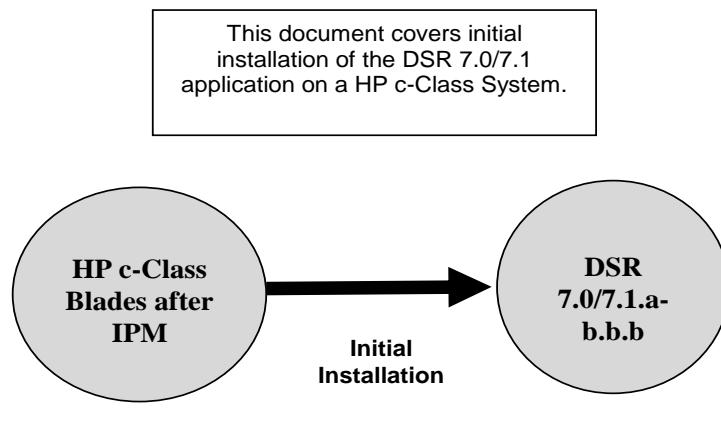


Figure 2 Example of Initial Application Installation Path

## 3.0 INSTALL OVERVIEW

This section provides a brief overview of the recommended method for installing DSR software that is on an HP c-Class system. The basic install process and approximate time required is outlined in **Figure 4**.

### 3.1 Required Materials

1. One (1) target release Application Media, or a target-release ISO
2. One (1) ISO of TPD release, or later shipping baseline as per Oracle ECO

### 3.2 Installation Overview

This section describes the overall strategy to be employed for a single or multi-site DSR 7.0/7.1 installation. It also lists the procedures required for installation with estimated times. **Section 3.2.1** discusses the overall install strategy and includes an installation flow chart that can be used to determine exactly which procedures should be run for an installation. **Section 3.2.2** lists the steps required to install a DSR 7.0/7.1 system. These latter sections expand on the information from the matrix and provide a general timeline for the installation.

### 3.2.1 Installation Strategy

A successful installation of DSR requires careful planning and assessment of all configuration materials and installation variables. Once a site survey has been conducted with the customer, the installer should use this section to map out the exact procedure list that will be executed at each site.

**Figure 3** illustrates the overall process that each DSR installation will involve. In summary:

- 1) An overall installation requirement is decided upon. Among the data that should be collected:
  - The total number of sites
  - The number of servers at each site and their role(s)
  - Does DSR's networking interface terminate on a Layer 2 or Layer 3 boundary?
  - Number of enclosures at each site -- if any at all.
  - Will NOAMs use rack-mount servers or server blades?
  - (Per Site) Will MP's be in N+0 configurations or in active/standby?
  - What time zone should be used across the entire collection of DSR sites?
  - Will SNMP traps be viewed at the NOAM, or will an external NMS be used? (Or both?)
- 2) A site survey (NAPD) is conducted with the customer to determine exact networking and site details. **Note:** XMI and IMI addresses are difficult to change once configured. It is very important that these addresses are well planned and not expected to change after a site is installed.
- 3) For each SOAM /MP/DR-NOAM only site (i.e. sites NOT containing the main NOAM server) , the installer will execute the procedures in document [3] (For DSR 7.0) and [26] (For DSR 7.1) to set up the PMAC, HP enclosures, and switches. Then, using the procedures in this document, all servers will be IPM-ed with the proper TPD and DSR application ISO image. **Figure 4** details the exact procedures that are to be executed for the 2nd part of this install. When this is complete, all non-NOAM sites will be reachable through the network and ready for further installation when the primary NOAM site is brought up.
- 4) The installer will then move to the "main" site that will contain the primary NOAM. Again, [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1) will be executed for this site. Then, moving on to the procedures in this document, **Figure 4** is consulted to determine the procedure list. During this install, the user will "bring up" the other sub-sites (if they exist) that were configured in step 3. For single sites where the NOAM/SOAM/MPs are all located together, then step 3 is skipped and the entire install is covered by this step.
- 5) Once the primary NOAM site has been installed according to [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1) and this document, then full DSR installation is complete.

**Note:** An alternative install strategy will swap steps 3 & 4. The main NOAM site is installed first, and then the sub-sites (DR-NOAM, SOAM/MP only) are installed and brought up on the NOAM as they are configured. This approach is perfectly valid, but is not reflected in the flow-charts/diagrams shown here.

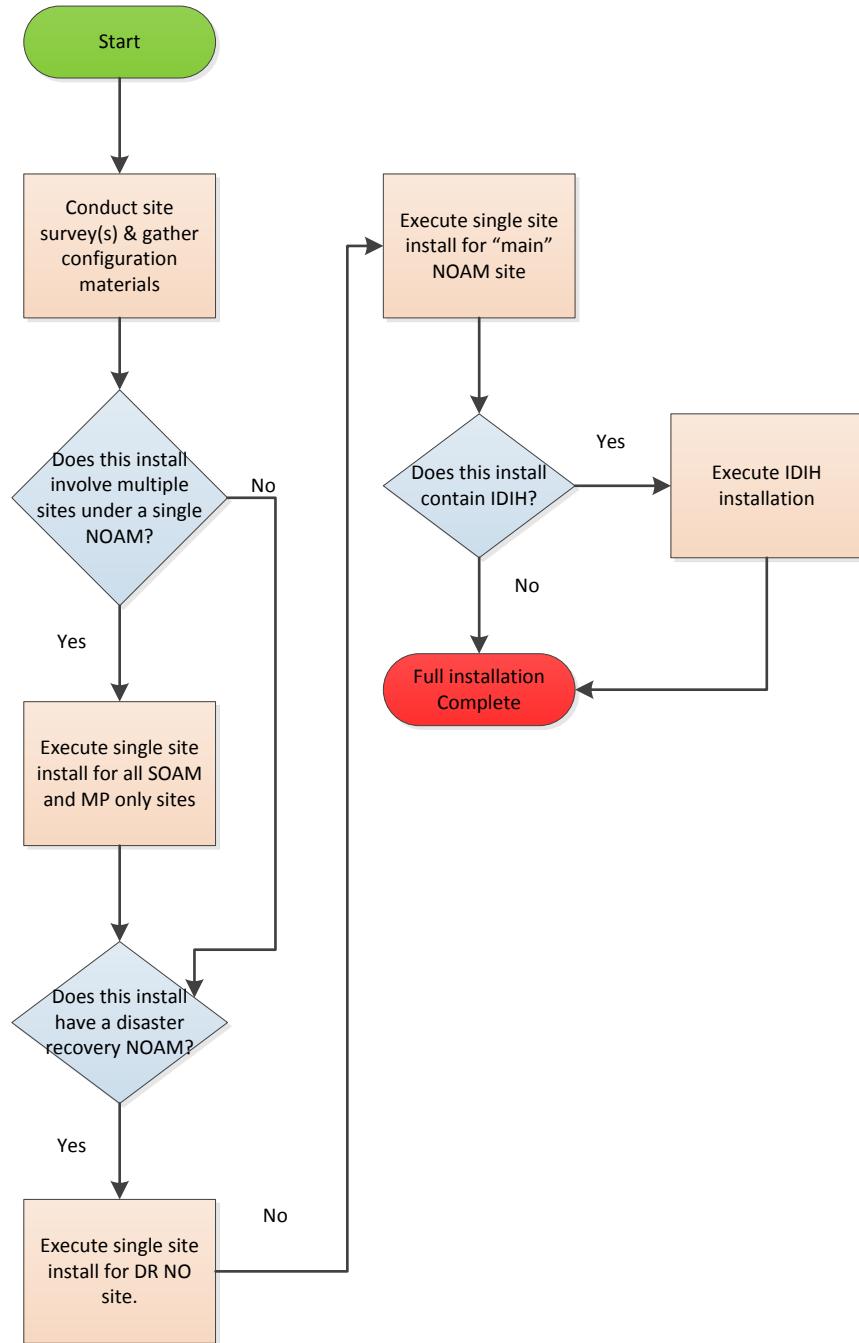


Figure 3 DSR Installation: High Level Sequence

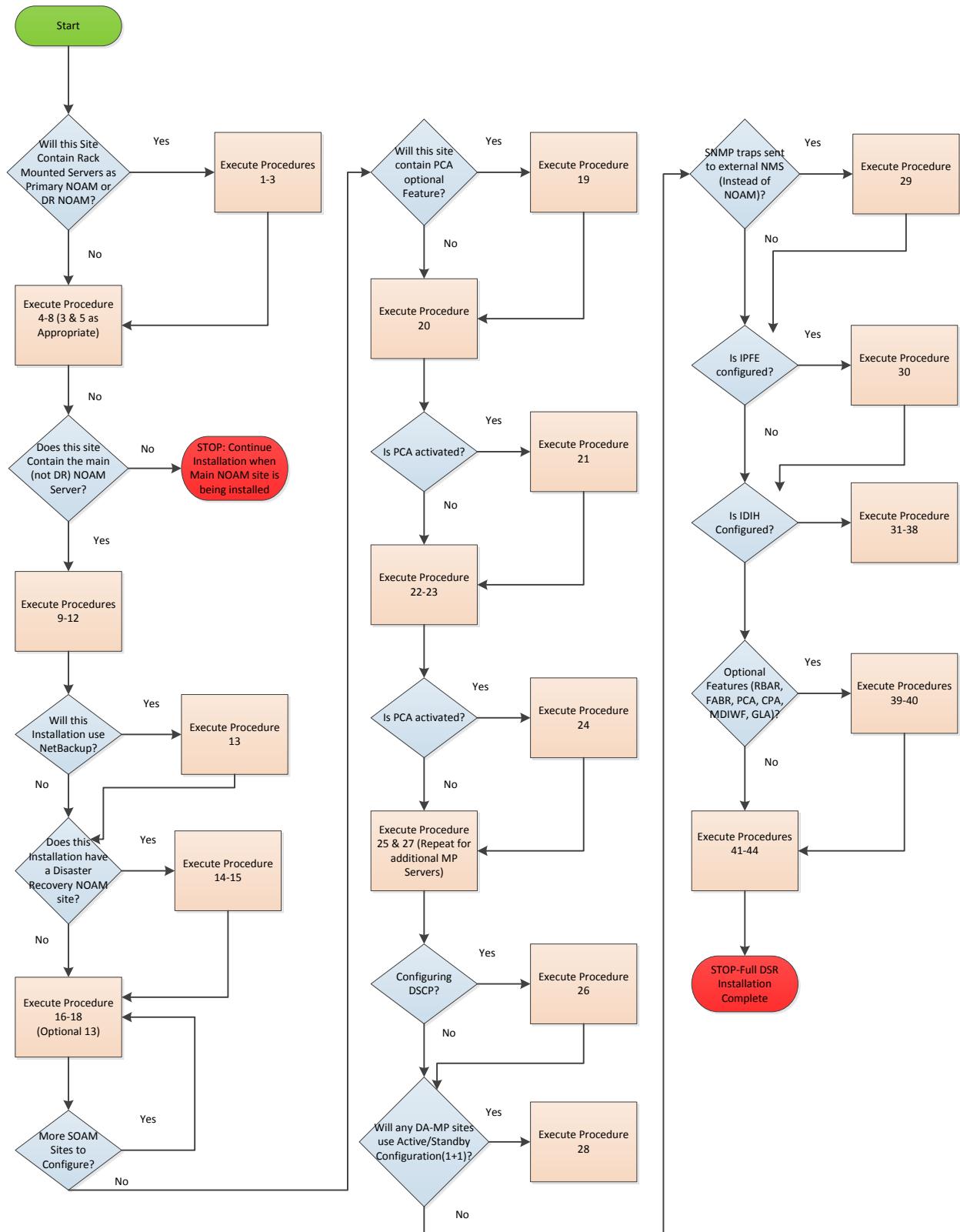


Figure 4 DSR Single Site Installation Procedure Map

### 3.2.2 SNMP Configuration

The network-wide plan for SNMP configuration should be decided upon before DSR installation proceeds. This section provides some recommendations for these decisions.

SNMP traps can originate from the following entities in a DSR installation:

- DSR Application Servers (NOAM, SOAM, MPs of all types)
- DSR Auxiliary Components (OA, Switches, TVOE hosts, PMAC)

DSR application servers can be configured to:

1. Send all their SNMP traps to the NOAM via merging from their local SOAM. All traps will terminate at the NOAM and be viewable from the NOAM GUI (entire network) and the SOAM GUI (site specific). Traps are displayed on the GUI both as alarms and logged in trap history. This is the default configuration option and no changes are required for this to take effect.
2. Send all their SNMP traps to an external Network Management Station (NMS). The traps will be seen at the SOAM AND/OR NOAM as alarms AND they will be viewable at the configured NMS(s) as traps.

Application server SNMP configuration is done from the NOAM GUI, near the end of DSR installation. See the procedure list for details.

DSR auxiliary components must have their SNMP trap destinations set explicitly. Trap destinations can be the NOAM VIP, the SOAMP VIP, or an external (customer) NMS. The recommended configuration is as follows:

The following components:

- PMAC (TVOE)
- PMAC (App)
- OAs
- All Switch types (4948, 3020, 6120.6125G)
- TVOE for DSR Servers

Should have their SNMP trap destinations set to:

1. The local SOAM VIP
2. The customer NMS, if available

### 3.2.3 Installation Procedures

The following table illustrates the progression of the installation process by procedure with estimated times. The estimated times and the phases that must be completed may vary due to differences in typing ability and system configuration. The phases outlined in are to be executed in the order they are listed.

TABLE 2 INSTALLATION OVERVIEW

Procedure	Phase	Elapsed Time (Minutes)	
		This Step	Cum.
<b>Procedure 1</b>	Continue TVOE Configuration on First RMS Server	15	15
<b>Procedure 2</b>	Configure TVOE on Additional RMS Server(s)	20	35
<b>Procedure 3</b>	Configure TVOE on Server Blades	20	55
<b>Procedure 4</b>	Load Application and TPD ISO onto PM&C Server	5	60
<b>Procedure 5</b>	Create NOAM Guest VMs	5	65
<b>Procedure 6</b>	Create SOAM Guest VMs	5	70
<b>Procedure 7</b>	IPM blades	20	90
<b>Procedure 8</b>	Install the application software on the blades	20	110
<b>Procedure 9</b>	Configure the First NOAM Server	25	135
<b>Procedure 10</b>	Configure the NO AM Server Group	15	150
<b>Procedure 11</b>	Configure the Second NOAM Server	15	165
<b>Procedure 12</b>	Complete Configuring the NOAM Server Group	10	175
<b>Procedure 13</b>	Install NetBackup Client on NOAM Servers*	10	185
<b>Procedure 14</b>	NOAM Configuration for DR Site*	10	195
<b>Procedure 15</b>	NOAM Pairing for DSR NO DR Site*	10	205
<b>Procedure 16</b>	Configure the SOAM Network Element	15	220
<b>Procedure 17</b>	Configure the SOAM Servers	10	230
<b>Procedure 18</b>	Configure the SOAM Server Group	10	240
<b>Procedure 19</b>	Activate PCA (PCA Only)*	10	250
<b>Procedure 20</b>	Configure the MP Blade Servers	5	255
<b>Procedure 21</b>	Configure Places and Assign MP Servers to Places (PCA Only)*	10	265
<b>Procedure 22</b>	Configure the MP Server Groups	10	275
<b>Procedure 23</b>	Configure the Signaling Network	30	305
<b>Procedure 24</b>	Additional Services to Network Mapping (PCA Only)*	10	315
<b>Procedure 25</b>	Configure the Signaling Devices	10	325
<b>Procedure 26</b>	Configure DSCP Values for Outgoing Traffic*	10	335
<b>Procedure 27</b>	Configure the Signaling Network Routes	15	350
<b>Procedure 28</b>	Add VIP for Signaling Networks*	5	355
<b>Procedure 29</b>	Configure SNMP for Traps Receivers*	5	360
<b>Procedure 30</b>	IP Front End Configuration*	15	405
<b>Procedure 31</b>	IDIH Installation*	60	465
<b>Procedure 32</b>	IDIH Configuration-Data Syncornization*	15	480
<b>Procedure 33</b>	IDIH Configuration-SSO Domain*	30	510

<b>Procedure 34</b>	IDIH Configuration-DSR Configuration*	20	530
<b>Procedure 35</b>	IDIH Configuration-Mail Server*	20	550
<b>Procedure 36</b>	IDIH Configuration-SNMP Management Server*	20	570
<b>Procedure 37</b>	IDIH Configuration- Change Network Interface*	20	590
<b>Procedure 38</b>	IDIH Configuration- Generate Disaster Recovery FDC File*		
<b>Procedure 39</b>	Activate Optional Features*	30	620
<b>Procedure 40</b>	Configure ComAgent Connections*	20	640
<b>Procedure 41</b>	Backup TVOE Configuration*	20	660
<b>Procedure 42</b>	Backup PMAC Application*	20	680
<b>Procedure 43</b>	Backup NOAM Database*	20	700
<b>Procedure 44</b>	Backup SOAM Database*	20	720

\* denotes Optional Features.

### 3.2 Optional Features

When DSR installation is complete, further configuration and/or installation steps will need to be taken for optional features that may be present in this deployment. Please refer to these documents for the post-DSR install configuration steps needed for their components.

TABLE 3 OPTIONAL FEATURES

Feature	Document
Diameter Mediation	DSR Meta Administration Feature Activation Procedure, E58661
Charging Proxy Application (CPA)	DSR CPA Feature Activation Procedure, E58663
Full Address Based Resolution (FABR)	DSR FABR Feature Activation Procedure, E58664
Range Based Address Resolution (RBAR)	DSR RBAR Feature Activation Procedure, E58665
Map-Diameter Interworking (MAP-IWF)	DSR MAP-Diameter IWF Feature Activation Procedure, E58666
Policy and Charging Application (PCA)	DSR 7.0 PCA Activation and Configuration Procedure, E58667 DSR 7.1 PCA Activation and Configuration Procedure, E63560
Gateway Location Application (GLA)	DSR GLA Feature Activation Procedure, E58659

## 4.0 SOFTWARE INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

As mentioned earlier, the hardware installation and network cabling should be done before executing the procedures in this document. It is assumed that at this point, the user has access to:

- ILO consoles of all server blades at all sites
- ssh access to the PMAC servers at all sites
- GUI access to PMAC servers at all sites
- A configuration station with a web browser, ssh client, and scp client.

### SUDO

As a non-root user (**admusr**), many commands (*when run as admusr*) now require the use of '**sudo**'.

### IPv6

IPv6 configuration of XMI and IMI networks has been introduced in DSR 7.1. Standard IPv6 formats for IPv6 and prefix can be used in all IP configuration screens which enable the DSR to be run in an IPv6 only environment. When using IPv6 for XMI and management, you must place the IPv6 address in brackets (highlighted in red below), example as followed:

**https://[<IPv6 address>]**

If a dual-stack (IPv4 & IPv6) network is required, it is recommended that you first configure the topology, and then "Migrate" to IPv6. Reference [24] for instructions on how to accomplish this migration.

## 4.1 Configure RMS TVOE Hosts

### Procedure 1 Continue TVOE Configuration on First RMS

S	This procedure will extend the TVOE networking configuration on the First RMS server in preparation for the installation of the NOAM VM on that RMS.
T	
E	
P	<b>Note:</b> If a NOAM VM will NOT be co-located with the PMAC VM on the First RMS (for instance, this server will only run PMAC, but there are 2 additional RMS which will not), then skip this procedure and continue with the next procedure.
#	
	<b>Prerequisite:</b> TVOE and PMAC (virtualized) have been installed on the First RMS Server as described in [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1)
	Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.
	If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.

## Procedure 1 Continue TVOE Configuration on First RMS

<input type="checkbox"/>	<p>1 Determine Bridge names and interfaces for XMI and IMI, and Netbackup (if used) networks.</p>	<p>Determine the bridge names and physical bridge interfaces to be used on the TVOE server for the NOAM XMI and IMI networks. Based on the site survey, you will need to determine if you are using VLAN tagging or not, what bonds will be used, and also the actual Ethernet interfaces that will make up those bonds.</p> <p>If the netbackup bridge and interface were not previously configured on this server when PMAC was installed, determine those values as well.</p> <p>Fill in the appropriate values in the table below:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>NOAM Guest Interface Name</th><th>TVOE Bridge Name</th><th>TVOE Bridge Interface</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>xmi</td><td>xmi</td><td> <p><b>Interface Bond</b> (e.g- bond0, bond1, etc)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt;</p> <p><b>Interface Name</b> (e.g. - bond0.3, bond1, bond0.100):</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface&gt;</p> </td></tr> <tr> <td>imi</td><td>imi</td><td> <p><b>Interface Bond:</b>(e.g. - bond0, bond1, etc)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt;</p> <p><b>Interface Name:</b> (e.g. - bond0.4, bond1, bond0.100)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface&gt;</p> </td></tr> <tr> <td>netbackup</td><td>netbackup</td><td> <p><b>Interface Name</b> (e.g. - eth11, eth04, eth03, etc)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface&gt;</p> </td></tr> </tbody> </table>	NOAM Guest Interface Name	TVOE Bridge Name	TVOE Bridge Interface	xmi	xmi	<p><b>Interface Bond</b> (e.g- bond0, bond1, etc)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt;</p> <p><b>Interface Name</b> (e.g. - bond0.3, bond1, bond0.100):</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface&gt;</p>	imi	imi	<p><b>Interface Bond:</b>(e.g. - bond0, bond1, etc)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt;</p> <p><b>Interface Name:</b> (e.g. - bond0.4, bond1, bond0.100)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface&gt;</p>	netbackup	netbackup	<p><b>Interface Name</b> (e.g. - eth11, eth04, eth03, etc)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface&gt;</p>
NOAM Guest Interface Name	TVOE Bridge Name	TVOE Bridge Interface												
xmi	xmi	<p><b>Interface Bond</b> (e.g- bond0, bond1, etc)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt;</p> <p><b>Interface Name</b> (e.g. - bond0.3, bond1, bond0.100):</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface&gt;</p>												
imi	imi	<p><b>Interface Bond:</b>(e.g. - bond0, bond1, etc)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt;</p> <p><b>Interface Name:</b> (e.g. - bond0.4, bond1, bond0.100)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface&gt;</p>												
netbackup	netbackup	<p><b>Interface Name</b> (e.g. - eth11, eth04, eth03, etc)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface&gt;</p>												
<input type="checkbox"/>	<p>2 <b>First RMS Server:</b> Login to the TVOE prompt</p>	<p>Log in to the TVOE prompt of the first RMS server as the <b>admusr</b> user (the one running the PMAC). Use either the iLO facility or the TVOE's IP address on the management network.</p>												

## Procedure 1 Continue TVOE Configuration on First RMS

3	<p><b>First RMS Server:</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Configure XMI Bridge Interface Bond</p>	<p>Verify the xmi bridge interface bond by running the following command:</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The output below is for illustrative purposes only. The example output below shows the control bridge configured.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm query --device=&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt;  Protocol: none On Boot: yes Persistent: yes Bonded Mode: active-backup Enslaving: eth01 eth02</pre> <p>If the bond has already been configured you will see output similar to what you see above. If this is so, <b>skip to the next step</b>. Otherwise, continue with this step.</p> <p>Create bonding interface and associate subordinate interfaces with bond:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --device=&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt; --onboot=yes --type=Bonding --mode=active-backup --miimon=100  Interface &lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond&gt; added  \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet1&gt; --type=Ethernet --master=&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt; --slave=yes --onboot=yes  Interface &lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet1&gt; updated  \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet2&gt; --type=Ethernet --master=&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt; --slave=yes --onboot=yes  Interface &lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet2&gt; updated  \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/syscheckAdm net ipbond --set --var=DEVICES -- val=&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt;, [bondX, bondX+1, ..., bondN]</pre> <p><b>Note:</b> All other existing bonds should be included in the 'val=' statement. E.g. if TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond = bond1, val=bond0,bond1</p> <pre>\$ sudo syscheckAdm net ipbond -enable</pre>
---	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Procedure 1 Continue TVOE Configuration on First RMS

4	<b>First RMS Server:</b> Create XMI Bridge Interface, If needed. (Only for VLAN tagging interfaces)	<p>If you are using VLAN tagging for the XMI bridge interface, then you must create the VLAN interface first. Execute the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --device=&lt;TOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface&gt; --onboot=yes</pre> <p>Interface &lt;TOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface&gt; created.</p>
5	<b>First RMS Server:</b> Create XMI Bridge	<p>Now , create the XMI bridge:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --type=Bridge -- name=xmi --onboot=yes --bridgeInterfaces=&lt;TOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface&gt;</pre> <p>Interface &lt;TOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface&gt; updated. Bridge xmi created.</p>

## Procedure 1 Continue TVOE Configuration on First RMS

<p>6 <input type="checkbox"/> <b>First RMS Server:</b> Configure IMI Bridge Interface Bond</p>	<p>Verify the imi bridge interface bond by running the following command:</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The output below is for illustrative purposes only. The example output below shows the IMI bridge configured.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm query --device=&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt;  Protocol: none On Boot: yes Persistent: yes Bonded Mode: active-backup Enslaving: eth01 eth02</pre> <p>If the bond has already been configured you will see output similar to what you see above. If this is so, skip to the next step. Otherwise, continue with this step.</p> <p>Create bonding interface and associate subordinate interfaces with bond:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --device=&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt; --onboot=yes --type=Bonding --mode=active-backup --miimon=100  Interface &lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond&gt; added  \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet1&gt; --type=Ethernet --master=&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond&gt; --slave=yes --onboot=yes  Interface &lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet1&gt; updated  \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet2&gt; --type=Ethernet --master=&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond&gt; --slave=yes --onboot=yes  Interface &lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet2&gt; updated</pre> <p>Execute the following 2 commands ONLY IF &lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond&gt; is <b>different</b> from &lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond&gt;</p> <pre>\$ sudo syscheckAdm net ipbond --set --var=DEVICES --val=&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt;, &lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt;,[other bonds...]</pre> <pre>\$ sudo syscheckAdm net ipbond -enable</pre>
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Procedure 1 Continue TVOE Configuration on First RMS

### Procedure 1 Continue TVOE Configuration on First RMS

10	<b>First RMS Server:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Create Netbackup bridge (Optional)	Perform the following command if you will have a dedicated Netbackup interface within your NOAM guests (and if the Netbackup bridge was NOT configured when setting up the PMAC earlier)  <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --type=Bridge --name=Netbackup --onboot=yes --MTU=&lt;NetBackup_MTU_size&gt; --bridgeInterfaces=&lt;TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface&gt;</pre>
----	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

<b>S</b>	This procedure will configure TVOE networking on rack mount servers other than the first one which has already been installed and is running PMAC.
<b>T</b>	Note: You will repeat this procedure for each additional RMS you wish to configure TVOE for.
<b>E</b>	<b>Prerequisite:</b> Rack mount server has been IPM'ed with TVOE OS as described in [3] (DSR 7.0)/[26] (DSR 7.1)
<b>P</b>	Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.
<b>#</b>	If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.

## Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

1	Determine Bridge names and interfaces for XMI and IMI, and Netbackup (if used) networks.	<p>Determine the bridge names and physical bridge interfaces to be used on the TVOE server for the NOAM XMI and IMI networks. Based on the site survey, you will need to determine if you are using VLAN tagging or not, what bonds will be used, and also the actual Ethernet interfaces that will make up those bonds.</p> <p>If the netbackup bridge and interface were not previously configured on this server when PMAC was installed, determine those values as well.</p> <p>Fill in the appropriate values in the table below:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>NOAM Guest Interface Name</th><th>TVOE Bridge Name</th><th>TVOE Bridge Interface</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>xmi</td><td>xmi</td><td> <p><b>Interface Bond</b> (e.g- bond0, bond1, etc)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt;</p> <p><b>Interface Name</b> (e.g. - bond0.3, bond1, bond0.100):</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface&gt;</p> </td></tr> <tr> <td>imi</td><td>imi</td><td> <p><b>Interface Bond:</b>(e.g. - bond0, bond1, etc)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt;</p> <p><b>Interface Name:</b> (e.g. - bond0.4, bond1, bond0.100)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface&gt;</p> </td></tr> <tr> <td>netbackup</td><td>netbackup</td><td> <p>: <b>Interface Name</b> (e.g. - eth11, eth04, eth03, etc)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface&gt;</p> </td></tr> <tr> <td>management</td><td>management</td><td> <p><b>Interface Name</b> (e.g. bond0.2, bond0.37, etc)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface&gt;</p> </td></tr> </tbody> </table>	NOAM Guest Interface Name	TVOE Bridge Name	TVOE Bridge Interface	xmi	xmi	<p><b>Interface Bond</b> (e.g- bond0, bond1, etc)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt;</p> <p><b>Interface Name</b> (e.g. - bond0.3, bond1, bond0.100):</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface&gt;</p>	imi	imi	<p><b>Interface Bond:</b>(e.g. - bond0, bond1, etc)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt;</p> <p><b>Interface Name:</b> (e.g. - bond0.4, bond1, bond0.100)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface&gt;</p>	netbackup	netbackup	<p>: <b>Interface Name</b> (e.g. - eth11, eth04, eth03, etc)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface&gt;</p>	management	management	<p><b>Interface Name</b> (e.g. bond0.2, bond0.37, etc)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface&gt;</p>
NOAM Guest Interface Name	TVOE Bridge Name	TVOE Bridge Interface															
xmi	xmi	<p><b>Interface Bond</b> (e.g- bond0, bond1, etc)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt;</p> <p><b>Interface Name</b> (e.g. - bond0.3, bond1, bond0.100):</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface&gt;</p>															
imi	imi	<p><b>Interface Bond:</b>(e.g. - bond0, bond1, etc)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt;</p> <p><b>Interface Name:</b> (e.g. - bond0.4, bond1, bond0.100)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface&gt;</p>															
netbackup	netbackup	<p>: <b>Interface Name</b> (e.g. - eth11, eth04, eth03, etc)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface&gt;</p>															
management	management	<p><b>Interface Name</b> (e.g. bond0.2, bond0.37, etc)</p> <p>[REDACTED]</p> <p>&lt;TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface&gt;</p>															

## Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

2	<b>RMS Server:</b> Login	Log in to the TVOE prompt of the RMS Server as <b>admusr</b> using the iLO facility.
3	<b>RMS Server iLO:</b> Modify control bridge if using tagged control interface (Optional)	<p>If you are using VLAN tagging for your control interface, you must reconfigure the default control bridge configuration. Otherwise, <b>skip this step</b> and proceed to the next step.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --type=Bridge --name=control --delBridgeInt=bond0 -onboot=yes Bridge control updated.</pre> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --device=bond0.&lt;Control_VLAN_ID&gt; --onboot=yes Interface bond0.X added</pre> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --type=Bridge --name=control --addBridgeInt=bond0.&lt;Control_VLAN_ID&gt; Bridge control updated.</pre>

## Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

4 <input type="checkbox"/> <b>RMS Server:</b> Configure XMI Bridge Interface Bond	<p>Verify the xmi bridge interface bond by running the following command:</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The output below is for illustrative purposes only. The example output below shows the control bridge configured.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm query --device=&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt;  Protocol: none On Boot: yes Persistent: yes Bonded Mode: active-backup Enslaving: eth01 eth02</pre> <p>If the bond has already been configured you will see output similar to what you see above. If this is so, <b>skip to the next step</b>. Otherwise, continue with this step.</p> <p>Create bonding interface and associate subordinate interfaces with bond:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --device=&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt; --onboot=yes --type=Bonding --mode=active-backup --miimon=100  Interface &lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond&gt; added  \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet1&gt; --type=Ethernet --master=&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt; --slave=yes --onboot=yes  Interface &lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet1&gt; updated  \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet2&gt; --type=Ethernet --master=&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt; --slave=yes --onboot=yes  Interface &lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet2&gt; updated  \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/syscheckAdm net ipbond --set --var=DEVICES -- val=&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt;, [bondX, bondX+1, ..., bondN]</pre> <p><b>Note:</b> All other existing bonds should be included in the 'val=' statement. E.g. if TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond = bond1, val=bond0,bond1</p> <pre>\$ sudo syscheckAdm net ipbond -enable</pre>
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

4	<b>RMS Server:</b> Create XMI Bridge Interface, If needed. (Only for VLAN tagging interfaces)	If you are using VLAN tagging for the XMI bridge interface, then you must create the VLAN interface first. Execute the following command:  <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --device=&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface&gt; --onboot=yes</pre> Interface <TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface> created.
5	<b>RMS Server:</b> Create XMI Bridge	Now , create the XMI bridge:  <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --type=Bridge -- name=xmi --onboot=yes --bridgeInterfaces=&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface&gt;</pre> Interface <TOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface> updated. Bridge xmi created.

## Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

<p>6 <b>RMS Server:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Configure IMI Bridge Interface Bond</p>	<p>Verify the imi bridge interface bond by running the following command:</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The output below is for illustrative purposes only. The example output below shows the control bridge configured.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm query --device=&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt;  Protocol: none On Boot: yes Persistent: yes Bonded Mode: active-backup Enslaving: eth01 eth02</pre> <p>If the bond has already been configured you will see output similar to what you see above. If this is so, skip to the next step. Otherwise, continue with this step.</p> <p>Create bonding interface and associate subordinate interfaces with bond:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --device=&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt; --onboot=yes --type=Bonding --mode=active-backup --miimon=100  Interface &lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond&gt; added  \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet1&gt; --type=Ethernet --master=&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond&gt; --slave=yes --onboot=yes  Interface &lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet1&gt; updated  \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet2&gt; --type=Ethernet --master=&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond&gt; --slave=yes --onboot=yes  Interface &lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet2&gt; updated</pre> <p>Execute the following 2 commands ONLY IF &lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond&gt; is different from &lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond&gt;</p> <pre>\$ sudo syscheckAdm net ipbond --set --var=DEVICES --val=&lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt;, &lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt;, [other bonds...]</pre> <pre>\$ sudo syscheckAdm net ipbond -enable</pre>
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

7	<b>RMS Server:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Create IMI Bridge Interface	If you are using VLAN tagging for the IMI bridge interface, then you must create the VLAN interface first. Execute the following command: <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --device=&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface&gt; --onboot=yes</pre> <p>Interface &lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface&gt; created.</p>
8	<b>RMS Server:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Create IMI Bridge	Create the IMI bridge: <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --type=Bridge -- name=imi --onboot=yes --bridgeInterfaces=&lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface&gt;</pre> <p>Interface &lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface&gt; updated. Bridge imi created.</p>

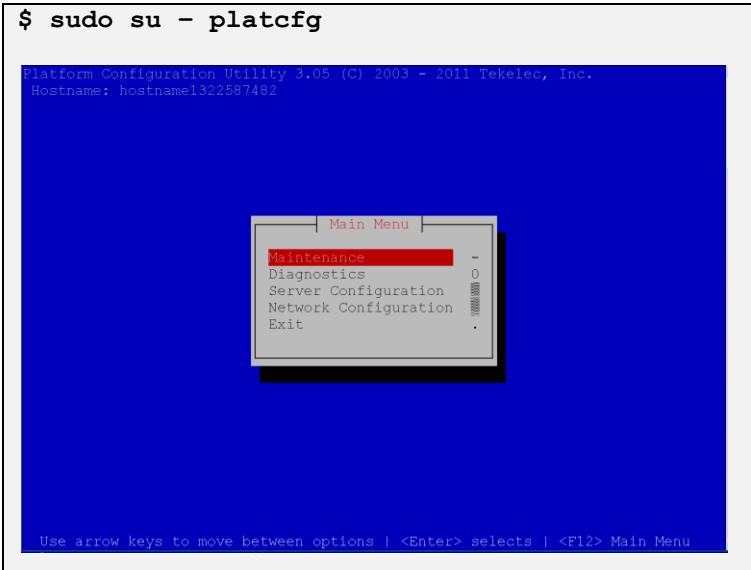
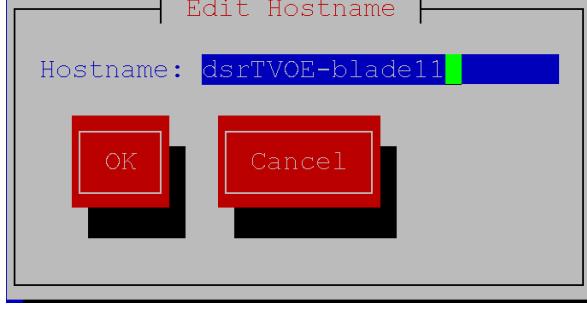
## Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

<p>9 <input type="checkbox"/> <b>RMS server</b></p> <p><b>iLO:</b> Create management bridge and assign TVOE Management IP</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> The output below is for illustrative purposes only. The site information for this system will determine the network interfaces, (<i>network devices, bonds, and bond enslaved devices</i>), to configure.</p> <p>If &lt;TVOE_Management_Bridge_Interface&gt; or the bond it is based on (if using tagged interface) has not yet been created, then execute the next 3 commands. Otherwise, skip to the “EXAMPLE...” section:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --device=&lt;TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt; --onboot=yes --type=Bonding --mode=active-backup --miimon=100  Interface &lt;TVOE_Management_Bridge_Interface&gt; added</pre> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=&lt;TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Bond_Interface1&gt; --type=Ethernet --master=&lt;TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt; --slave=yes --onboot=yes  Interface &lt;mgmt_ethernet_interface1&gt; updated</pre> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=&lt;TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Bond_Interface2&gt; --type=Ethernet --master=&lt;TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface_Bond&gt; --slave=yes --onboot=yes  Interface &lt;mgmt_ethernet_interface2&gt; updated</pre> <p><b>EXAMPLE 1:</b> Create Management bridge using untagged interfaces</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --type=Bridge --name=management --bootproto=none --onboot=yes --address=&lt;TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address&gt; --netmask=&lt;TVOE_Mgmt_Netmask/Prefix&gt; --bridgeInterfaces=&lt;TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface&gt;</pre> <p><b>EXAMPLE 2:</b> Create Management bridge using tagged interfaces</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --device=&lt;TVOE_Management_Bridge_Interface&gt;  \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --type=Bridge --name=management --address=&lt;TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address&gt; --netmask=&lt;TVOE_Mgmt_Netmask/Prefix&gt; --onboot=yes --bridgeInterfaces=&lt;TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface&gt;</pre>
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

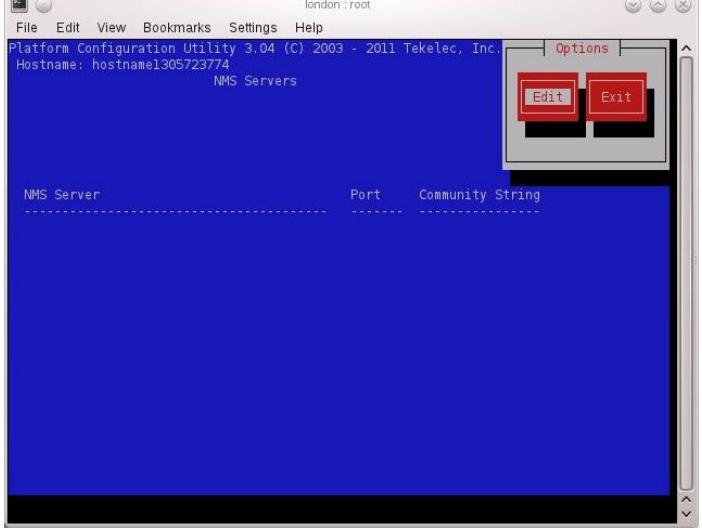
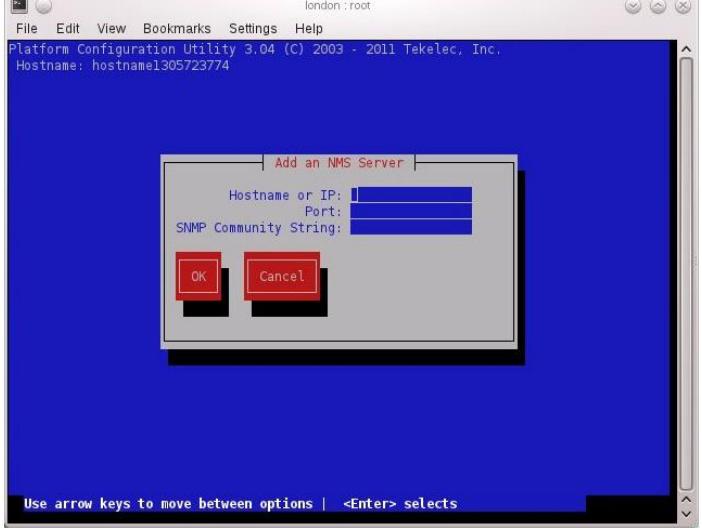
## Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

10	<b>RMS server</b> <b>iLO:</b> Add default route	<p>Create default route (execute regardless of which example is chosen):</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --route=default --gateway=&lt;TVOE_Mgmt_gateway_IP_address&gt; --device=management Route to management created.</pre>
11	<b>RMS Server:</b> Verify bridge creation status	<p>Verify that the XMI and IMI bridges have been created successfully (Example output for illustrative purposes only):</p> <pre>\$ brctl show [root@SunNetralTvoe admusr]# brctl show bridge name      bridge id      STP enabled      interfaces control          8000.002128a1a5a8    no              bond0                                          vnet0                                          vnet12                                          vnet15                                          vnet2                                          vnet7                                          bond0.641                                          vnet10                                          vnet14                                          vnet17                                          vnet5                                          bond0.637                                          vnet1                                          bond0.638                                          vnet13  imi              8000.002128a1a5a8    no management       8000.002128a1a5a8    no xmi              8000.002128a1a5a8    no</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Verify that "imi" and "xmi" are listed under the bridge name column.</li> <li>Verify that &lt;TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface&gt; is listed under the interfaces column for xmi.</li> <li>Verify that &lt;TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface&gt; is listed under the interfaces column for imi.</li> <li>Verify that the &lt;TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface&gt; is listed under the interface column for &lt;TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface&gt;</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> For this server, &lt;TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface&gt; was created in part #1 of the install procedure - [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1)</p>
12	<b>RMS Server</b> <b>iLO:</b> Create Netbackup bridge (Optional)	<p>Perform the following command if you will have a dedicated Netbackup interface within your NOAM guests (and if the Netbackup bridge was NOT configured when setting up the PMAC earlier)</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --type=Bridge --name=NetBackup --onboot=yes --MTU=&lt;NetBackup_MTU_size&gt; --bridgeInterfaces=&lt;TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface&gt;</pre>

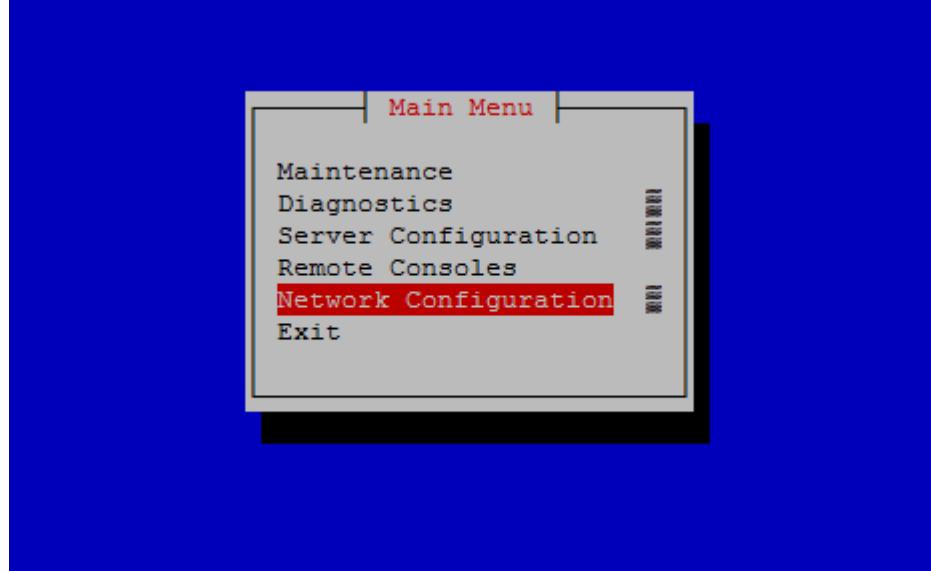
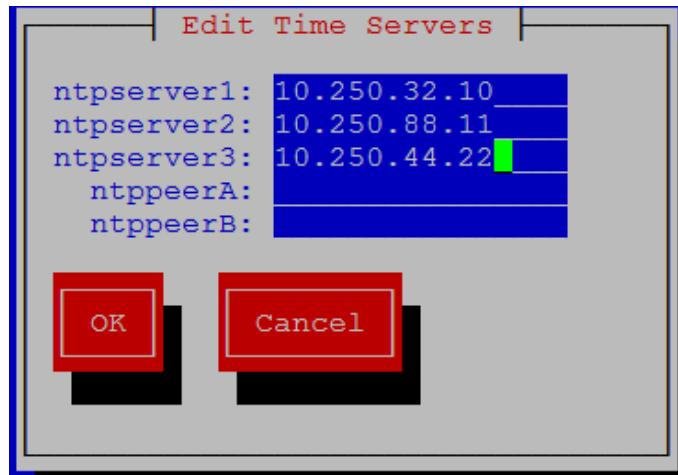
## Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

13	<b>RMS Server</b> iLO: Set Hostname	<pre>\$ sudo su - platcfg</pre> <p>Platform Configuration Utility 3.05 (C) 2003 - 2011 Tekelec, Inc. Hostname: hostname1322587482</p>  <p>Use arrow keys to move between options   &lt;Enter&gt; selects   &lt;F12&gt; Main Menu</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Server Configuration-&gt;Hostname-&gt; Edit</b> and enter a new hostname for your server:</p>  <p>Press <b>OK</b> and select and continue to press <b>Exit</b> until you are at the platcfg main menu again.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Although the new hostname has been properly configured and committed at this point, it will not appear on your command prompt unless you log out and log back in again.</p>
----	----------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

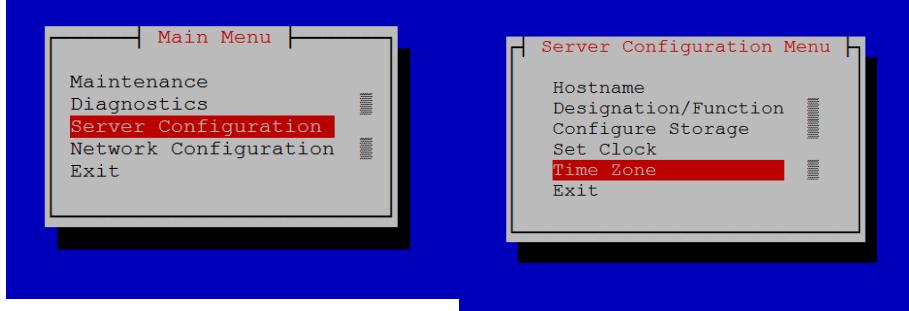
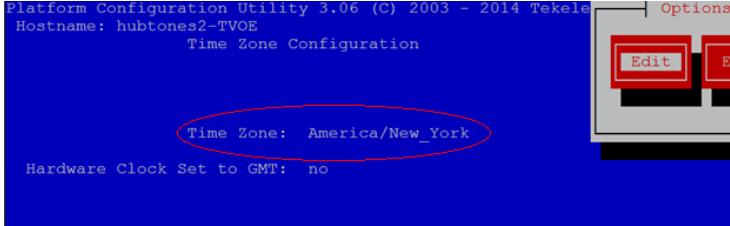
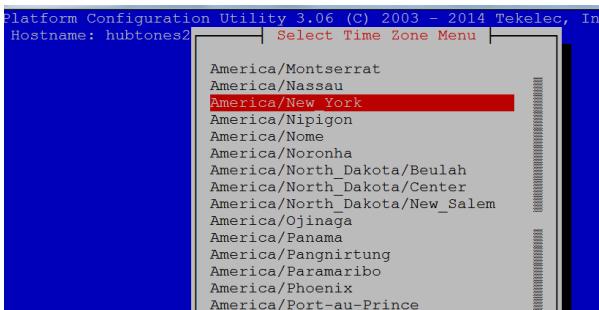
## Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

14	<b>RMS Server iLO: Configure SNMP</b>	<p>From the platcfg main menu, navigate to <b>Network Configuration -&gt; SNMP Configuration -&gt; NMS Configuration</b></p>  <p>Press <b>Edit</b>. Choose <b>Add a New NMS Server</b></p>  <p>Enter the following NMS servers, pressing <b>OK</b> after each one and then selecting the <b>Add NMS</b> option again:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the Hostname/IP of the Customer NMS Server, for port enter 162, and for Community String enter the community string provided in the customer NAPD Document.</li> <li>2. Enter the IP of the NOAM VIP, for port enter 162, and for Community String enter the community string provided in the customer NAPD Document</li> </ol> <p>Press <b>Exit</b>. Select <b>Yes</b> when prompted to restart the Alarm Routing Service. Once Done, press <b>Exit</b> to quit to the platcfg main menu.</p>
----	---------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

15	<b>RMS Server</b> iLO: Configure NTP	<p>Navigate to <b>Network Configuration</b></p>  <p>&gt;Main Menu</p> <p>Maintenance</p> <p>Diagnostics</p> <p>Server Configuration</p> <p>Remote Consoles</p> <p><b>Network Configuration</b></p> <p>Exit</p> <p>Navigate to <b>NTP</b> Click <b>Edit</b></p>  <p>Edit Time Servers</p> <p>ntpserver1: 10.250.32.10</p> <p>ntpserver2: 10.250.88.11</p> <p>ntpserver3: 10.250.44.22</p> <p>ntppeerA:</p> <p>ntppeerB:</p> <p>OK Cancel</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>ntpserver1: Enter customer provided NTP server #1 IP address.</li><li>ntpserver2: Enter customer provided NTP server #2 IP address.</li><li>ntpserver3: Enter customer provided NTP server #3 IP address.</li></ul> <p>Press <b>OK</b> Press <b>Exit</b> to return to the platcfg menu.</p>
----	-----------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

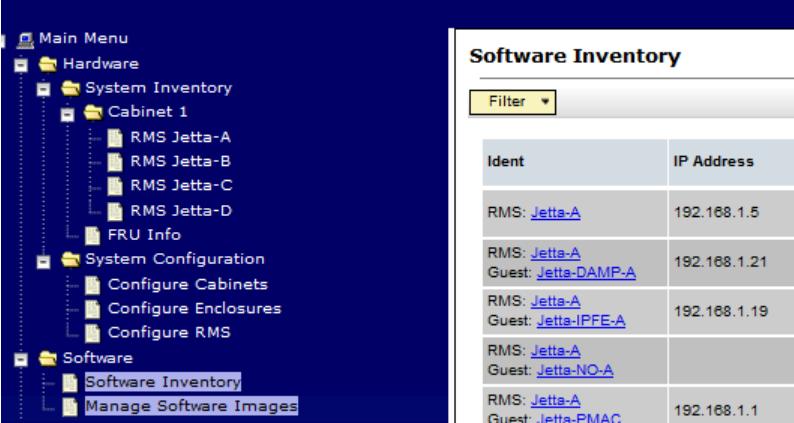
## Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

16	<b>RMS Server</b>	<p><b>iLO:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Configure Time Zone</p> <pre>\$ sudo su - platcfg</pre>
		<p> Navigate to <b>Server Configuration-&gt;Time Zone</b></p>   <p>If the time zone displayed matches the time zone you desire, then you can continue to hit <b>Exit</b> until you are out of the platcfg program. If you want a different time zone, then proceed with this instruction.</p> <p><b>Click Edit</b></p>  <p>Select the desired time zone from the list and press <b>Enter</b>    Continue pressing <b>Exit</b> until you are out of the platcfg program.</p>
17	<b>RMS Server</b>	<p><b>iLO:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Reboot Server</p> <p>Reboot the server by executing the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo su - platcfg</pre>



## 4.2 Configure Blade TVOE Hosts

### Procedure 3 Configure TVOE on Server Blades

<b>S</b>	This procedure will configure TVOE on the server blades that will host DSR NOAM VMs. It details the configuration for a single server blade and should be repeated for every TVOE blade that was IPM-ed for this installed.
<b>T</b>	
<b>E</b>	
<b>P</b>	<b># NOTE:</b> TVOE should only be installed on Blade servers that will run either as DSR SOAMs or DSR NOAMs. They should NOT be installed on Blade servers intended to run as DSR MPs.
	<b>Prerequisite:</b> TVOE OS has been installed on the target server blades as per instructions in [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1)
	Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.
	If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.
1	<p><b>PMAC Server:</b> Exchange SSH keys between PMAC and TVOE server</p> <p>Use the PMAC GUI to determine the Control Network IP address of TVOE server. From the PMAC GUI, navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Software -&gt; Software Inventory</b>.</p>  <p>Note the IP address TVOE server.</p> <p>From a terminal window connection on the PMAC, login as the <b>admusr</b> user.</p> <p>Exchange SSH keys between the PMAC and the TVOE server using the keyexchange utility, using the Control network IP address for the TVOE blade server. When prompted for the password, enter the password for the TVOE server.</p> <pre>\$ keyexchange admusr@&lt;TVOE_Control_Blade_IP_address&gt;</pre>

### Procedure 3 Configure TVOE on Server Blades

2	<b>TVOE Server:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Login and Copy Configuration Scripts from PMAC	<p>Login as <b>admusr</b> on the TVOE server using the ILO facility.</p> <p>Execute the following commands:</p> <pre>\$ sudo scp admusr@&lt;Mgmt_Server_Control_IP_address&gt;:/usr/TKLC/smac/etc/TVOE* /usr/TKLC/</pre> <pre>\$ sudo chmod 777 /usr/TKLC/TVOE*</pre> <p><b>Note:</b> If no TVOE configuration scripts are found here, then please re-execute section 4.2.2, Step #13 of [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1)</p>
3	<b>TVOE Server:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Mezzanine card/ segregate d OAM/XMI network configuration	<p>If your TVOE server blade DOES have mezzanine cards AND you will be running OAM/XMI traffic on a separate physical network (<i>example below</i>). If you do not have mezzanine cards, <b>skip this step</b>.</p> <p>Execute the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/TVOEcfg.sh --xmivlan=&lt;XMI_VLAN_ID&gt; --imivlan=&lt;IMI_VLAN_ID&gt; mez</pre>

### Procedure 3 Configure TVOE on Server Blades

<input type="checkbox"/> <b>4 TVOE Server:</b> No Mezzanine card/ No segregate d OAM/XMI network configuration	<p>If your TVOE server blade <b>DOES NOT</b> have mezzanine cards AND/OR you will NOT be running OAM/XMI traffic over a separate physical network (example below).</p> <p>1 – Control VLAN            2 – Platform Management / iLO VLAN            3 – OAM VLAN            4 – Blade-to-Blade non-Routable VLAN            5 – Signaling VLAN</p> <p>Execute the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/TVOEcfg.sh --xmivlan=&lt;XMI_VLAN_ID&gt; --imivlan=&lt;IMI_VLAN_ID&gt;</pre>
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

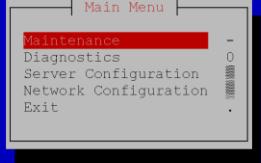
### Procedure 3 Configure TVOE on Server Blades

5	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>TVOE Server:</b> Verify TVOE configuration</p>	<p>XMI_VLAN_ID is the VLAN ID for the XMI network in this installation, and IMI_VLAN_ID is the VLAN ID for the IMI network in this installation. For deployments with aggregation switches, the IMI and XMI VLAN IDs will be the values of the “INTERNAL-IMI” and “INTERNAL-XMI” VLAN ids, respectively. For layer-2 only deployments, the IMI and XMI VLAN ids will be obtained from the customer.</p> <p>Upon executing the proper version of the TVOEcfg.sh script, you should see an output similar to the following (example shows output without the “mezz” parameter):</p> <pre>Using onboard NICs ... Interface bond0.3 added Interface bond0.4 added Setting up the bridge and unsetting network info Interface bond0.3 was updated. Bridge xmi added! Setting up the bridge and unsetting network info Interface bond0.4 was updated. Bridge imi added!</pre> <p>The prompt will return.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If for any reason, you ran the wrong version of the TVOEcfg.sh command, you can execute the following command to reset the networking configuration so you can repeat either steps 3 or 4:</p> <pre>/usr/TKLC/TVOEclean.sh</pre>
6	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>TVOE Server:</b> Configure XMI IP and Default Route</p>	<p>Configure IP address on the XMI network:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --type=Bridge --name=xmi --address=&lt;TVOE_XMI_IP_ADDRESS&gt; --netmask=&lt;TVOE_XMI_Netmask/Prefix&gt;  Interface xmi was updated.</pre> <p>Restart network services:</p> <pre>\$ sudo service network restart [wait for the prompt to return]</pre> <p>Set the default route:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --route=default --device=xmi --gateway=&lt;TVOE_XMI_Gateway_IP_Address&gt;  Route to xmi added.</pre>

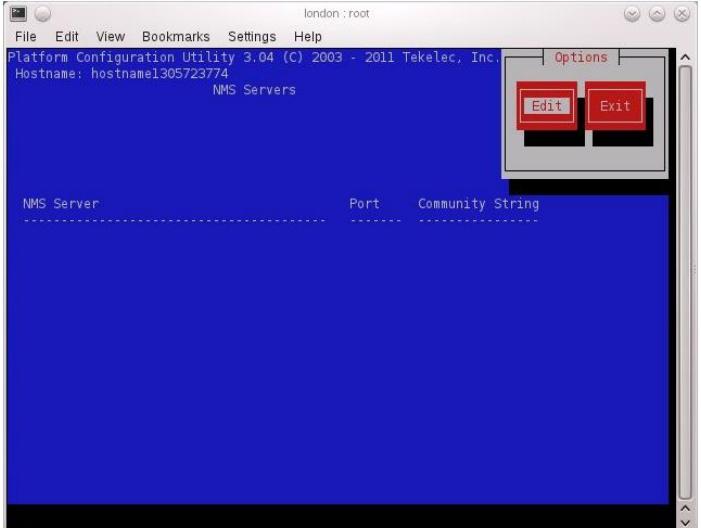
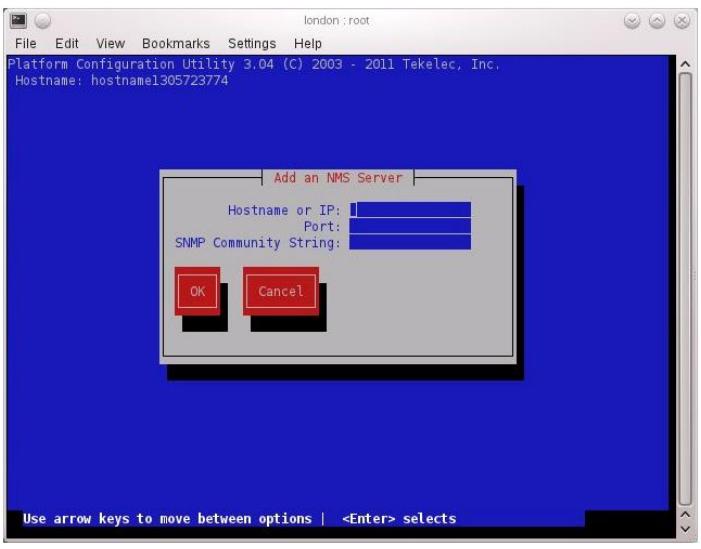
### Procedure 3 Configure TVOE on Server Blades

7	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>TVOE Server:</b> Configure NetBackup Dedicated Interface and Bridge (Optional)	<p>In these examples, &lt;interface&gt; should be replaced with the actual Ethernet interface that will be used as the dedicated NetBackup port. For instance, “<b>eth01</b>” or “<b>eth22</b>”.</p> <p>Un-bonded Ethernet Interface:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=&lt;Ethernet interface&gt; --slave=no --onboot=yes</pre> <p><b>[OPTIONAL]</b> If this installation is using jumbo frames, set the Ethernet interface MTU to the desired jumbo frame size:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=&lt;Ethernet interface&gt; --MTU=&lt;NetBackup_MTU_size&gt;</pre> <p>Create NetBackup VM Bridge Interface:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --type=Bridge --name=netbackup --bridgeInterfaces=&lt;Ethernet interface&gt; --onboot=yes</pre>
---	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

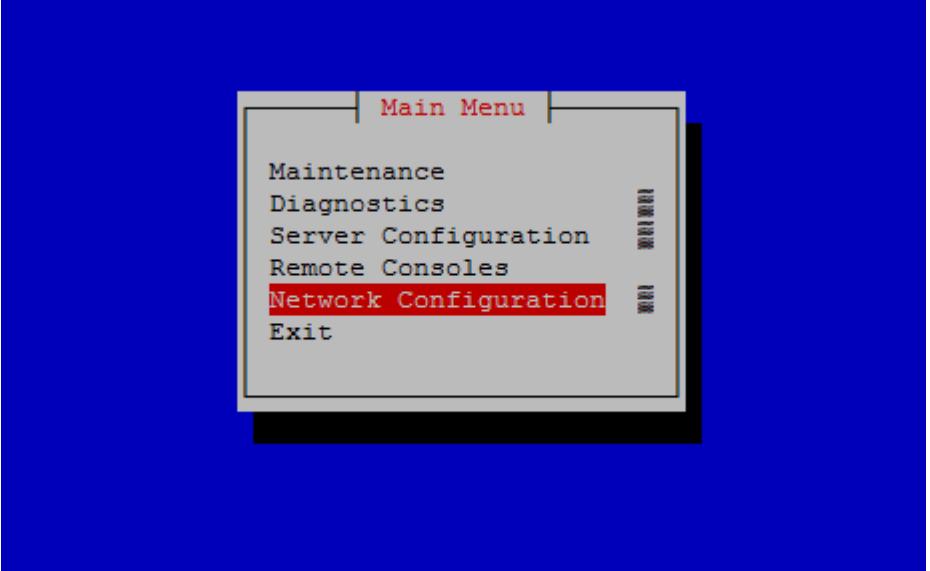
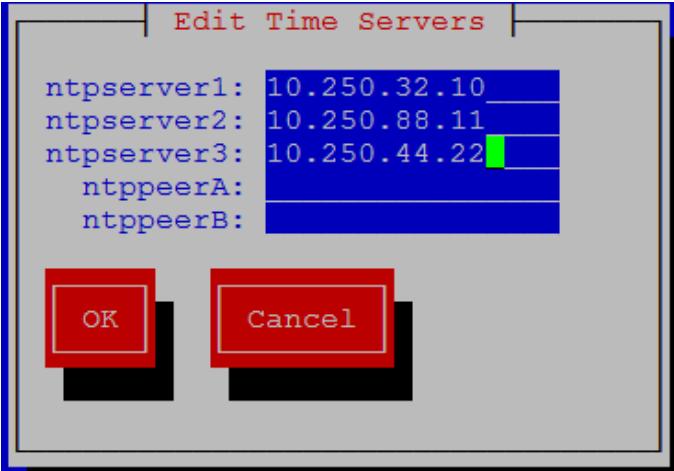
### Procedure 3 Configure TVOE on Server Blades

8	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>TVOE Server:</b> Set Hostname</p>	<pre>\$ sudo su - platcfg</pre> <p>Platform Configuration Utility 3.05 (C) 2003 - 2011 Tekelec, Inc. Hostname: hostname1322587482</p>  <p>Main Menu</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Maintenance</li><li>Diagnostics 0</li><li>Server Configuration</li><li>Network Configuration</li><li>Exit</li></ul> <p>Use arrow keys to move between options   &lt;Enter&gt; selects   &lt;F12&gt; Main Menu</p> <p>Hostname: dsrTVOE-blade11</p> <p>OK Cancel</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Although the new hostname has been properly configured and committed at this point, it will not appear on your command prompt unless you log out and log back in again.</p>
---	----------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

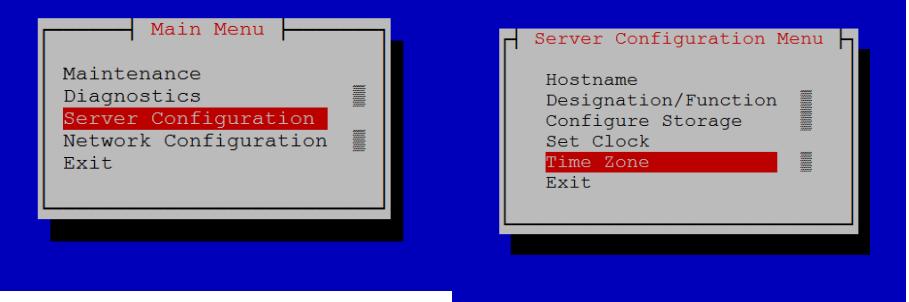
### Procedure 3 Configure TVOE on Server Blades

<p>9</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>TVOE Server: Configure SNMP</b></p>	<p>From the platcfg main menu, navigate to <b>Network Configuration -&gt; SNMP Configuration -&gt; NMS Configuration</b></p>  <p>Press <b>Edit</b>. Choose <b>Add a New NMS Server</b></p>  <p>Enter the following NMS servers, pressing <b>OK</b> after each one and then selecting the <b>Add NMS</b> option again:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the Hostname/IP of the Customer NMS Server, for port, enter 162, and for Community String enter the community string provided in the customer NAPD Document.</li> <li>2. Enter the IP of the SOAM VIP, for port enter 162, and for Community String enter the community string provided in the customer NAPD Document</li> </ol> <p>Press <b>Exit</b>. Select <b>Yes</b> when prompted to restart the Alarm Routing Service. Once Done, press <b>Exit</b> to quit to the platcfg main menu.</p>
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### Procedure 3 Configure TVOE on Server Blades

10	TVOE Server: Configure NTP	<p>Navigate to <b>Network Configuration</b></p> 
		<p>Navigate to <b>NTP</b> Click <b>Edit</b></p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>ntpserver1: Enter customer provided NTP server #1 IP address.</li><li>ntpserver2: Enter customer provided NTP server #2 IP address.</li><li>ntpserver3: Enter customer provided NTP server #3 IP address.</li></ul> <p>Press <b>OK</b> Press <b>Exit</b> to return to the platcfg menu.</p>

### Procedure 3 Configure TVOE on Server Blades

11	<b>TVOE Server:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Configure Time Zone	<pre>\$ sudo su - platcfg</pre> <p>Execute the command to start the configuration utility.</p> <p><b>Navigation:</b></p> <p>From the Main Menu, select <b>Server Configuration</b>. Then, from the Server Configuration Menu, select <b>Time Zone</b>.</p>  <p><b>Platform Configuration Utility 3.06 (C) 2003 - 2014 Tekelec</b>  Hostname: hubtones2-TVOE  Time Zone Configuration</p> <p>Time Zone: America/New_York</p> <p>Hardware Clock Set to GMT: no</p> <p>Options: <b>Edit</b> <b>Exit</b></p> <p>If the time zone displayed matches the time zone you desire, then you can continue to hit <b>Exit</b> until you are out of the platcfg program. If you want a different time zone, then proceed with this instruction.</p> <p><b>Click Edit</b></p>  <p>Select the desired time zone from the list and press <b>Enter</b>. Continue pressing <b>Exit</b> until you are out of the platcfg program.</p>
12	<b>TVOE Server:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Reboot	<p>Reboot the server by executing the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre>

### Procedure 3 Configure TVOE on Server Blades

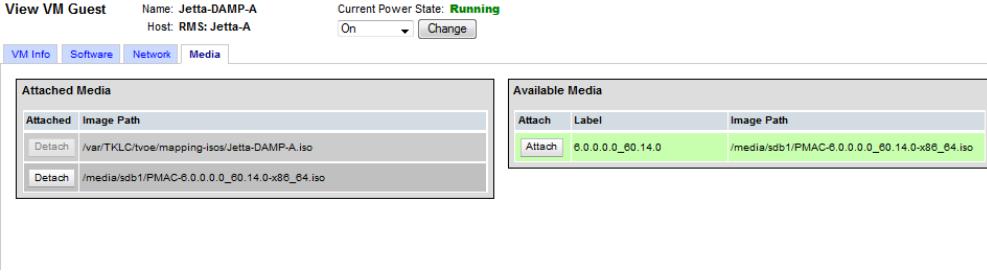
13	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>TVOE server:</b> Repeat Procedure for other TVOE blades.	Configuration of this TVOE server blade is complete. Repeat this procedure from the beginning for other TVOE hosts that need to be configured.
14	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Install SDS (Optional)</b>	If this deployment contains SDS, SDS can now be installed. Refer to document referenced in [8].

## 4.3 Create Virtual Machines for Applications

### Procedure 4 Load Application and TPD ISO onto PMAC Server

<b>S</b> <b>T</b> <b>E</b> <b>P</b> <b>#</b>	<p>This procedure will load the DSR Application and TPD ISO into the PM&amp;C Server</p> <p><b>Needed material:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Application Media</li> </ul> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
1	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>TVOE Host: Load Application ISO</b></p> <p>Add the Application ISO image to the PM&amp;C, this can be done in one of three ways:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Insert the Application CD required by the application into the removable media drive.</li> <li>2. Attach the USB device containing the ISO image to a USB port.</li> <li>3. Copy the Application iso file to the PM&amp;C server into the <b>"/var/TKLC/smac/image/isoimages/home/smacftpsr/"</b> directory as pmacftpsr user:</li> </ol> <p>cd into the directory where your ISO image is located on the <b>TVOE Host (not on the PM&amp;C server)</b></p> <p>Using sftp, connect to the PM&amp;C server</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <pre>\$ sftp pmacftpsr@&lt;pmac_management_network_ip&gt; \$ put &lt;image&gt;.iso</pre> </div> <p>After the image transfer is 100% complete, close the connection:</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <pre>\$ quit</pre> </div>

#### Procedure 4 Load Application and TPD ISO onto PMAC Server

2	<b>PMAC GUI:</b> Login	<p>Open web browser and enter:</p> <p><b><a href="http://&lt;PMAC Mgmt Network IP&gt;">http://&lt;PMAC Mgmt Network IP&gt;</a></b></p> <p>Login as <b>pmacadmin</b> user:</p>  <p>Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0, 9.0, or 10.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies.</p> <p>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</p> <p>Copyright © 2010, 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</p>
3	<b>PMAC GUI:</b> Attach the software Image to the PMAC Guest	<p>If in Step 1 the ISO image was transferred directly to the PM&amp;C guest via sftp, skip the rest of this step and continue with step 4. If the image is on a CD or USB device, continue with this step.</p> <p>In the PM&amp;C GUI, navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; VM Management</b>. In the "<b>VM Entities</b>" list, select the PM&amp;C guest. On the resulting "<b>View VM Guest</b>" page, select the <b>Media</b> tab.</p> <p>Under the <b>Media</b> tab, find the ISO image in the "<b>Available Media</b>" list, and click its <b>Attach</b> button. After a pause, the image will appear in the "<b>Attached Media</b>" list.</p> 

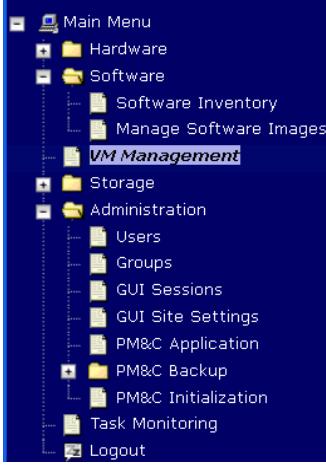
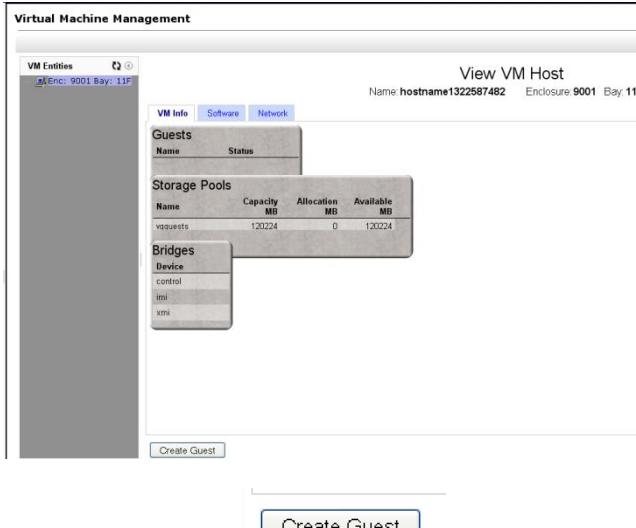
#### Procedure 4 Load Application and TPD ISO onto PMAC Server

4	<b>PMAC GUI:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Add Application Image	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Software -&gt; Manage Software Images</b></p> <p>Press <b>Add Image</b> button. Use the drop down to select the image.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Add Image</b>   <b>Edit Image</b>   <b>Delete Selected</b></p> <p>If the image was supplied on a CD or a USB drive, it will appear as a virtual device ("<b>device://...</b>"). These devices are assigned in numerical order as CD and USB images become available on the Management Server. The first virtual device is reserved for internal use by TVOE and PMAC; therefore, the iso image of interest is normally present on the second device, "<b>device://dev/sr1</b>". If one or more CD or USB-based images were already present on the Management Server before you started this procedure, choose a correspondingly higher device number.</p> <p>If in Step 1 the image was transferred to PMAC via sftp it will appear in the list as a local file "<b>/var/TKLC/...</b>".</p> <p><b>Add Software Image</b></p> <p>Images may be added from any of these sources:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Oracle-provided media in the PM&amp;C host's CD/DVD drive (Refer to Note)</li> <li>• USB media attached to the PM&amp;C's host (Refer to Note)</li> <li>• External mounts. Prefix the directory with "extfile://".</li> <li>• These local search paths:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ /var/TKLC/upgrade/*.iso</li> <li>◦ /var/TKLC/smac/image/isoimages/home/smacftpusr/*.iso</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>Note: CD and USB images mounted on PM&amp;C's VM host must first be made accessible to the PM&amp;C \</p> <p>Path: <input type="text" value="/var/TKLC/upgrade/DSR-7.1.0.0.0_71.11.0-x86_64.iso"/></p> <p>Description:</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Add New Image</b></p> <p>Select the appropriate path and Press <b>Add New Image</b> button.</p> <p>You may check the progress using the <b>Task Monitoring</b> link. Observe the green bar indicating success.</p> <p>Once the green bar is displayed, remove the DSR application Media from the optical drive of the management server.</p>
5	<b>PMAC GUI:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Load TPD ISO	<p>If the TPD ISO hasn't been loaded onto the PMAC already, repeat <b>steps 1 through 4</b> to load it using the TPD media or ISO.</p>

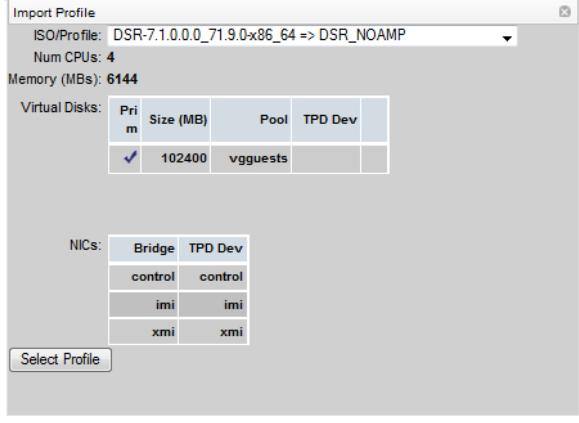
## Procedure 5 Create NOAM Guest VMs

<b>S</b> <b>T</b> <b>E</b> <b>P</b> <b>#</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps needed to create a DSR NOAM virtual machine (referred to as a "guest") on a TVOE server blade or TVOE RMS. It must be repeated for every NOAM server you wish to install.</p> <p><b>Prerequisite:</b> TVOE has been installed and configured on the target blade server or RMS</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
<b>1</b> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Login</p> <p>Open web browser and enter:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;"> <a href="http://&lt;PMAC Mgmt Network IP&gt;">http://&lt;PMAC Mgmt Network IP&gt;</a> </div> <p>Login as <b>pmacadmin</b> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;">    <b>Oracle System Login</b> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;"> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Log In</b></p> <p>Enter your username and password to log in</p> <p>Username: <input type="text" value="pmacadmin"/></p> <p>Password: <input type="password" value="*****"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Change password</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Log In</b></p> </div> <p>Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0, 9.0, or 10.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies.</p> <p><small>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</small></p> <p><small>Copyright © 2010, 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</small></p> </div>

## Procedure 5 Create NOAM Guest VMs

2	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Navigate to VM Management of the Target Server Blade</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; VM Management</b></p>  <p>Select the TVOE server blade or rack mounted server from the <b>VM Entities</b> listing on the left side of the screen. The selected server's guest machine configuration will then be displayed in the remaining area of the window.</p>  <p>Click <b>Create Guest</b></p>
---	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### Procedure 5 Create NOAM Guest VMs

3	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>PMAC GUI:</b> Configure VM Guest Parameters</p>	<p>Select <b>Import Profile</b></p>  <p>From the “<b>ISO/Profile</b>” drop-down box, select the entry that matches depending on the hardware that your NOAM VM TVOE server is running on and your preference for NetBackup interfaces:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>NOAM VM TVOE Hardware Type(s)</th><th>Dedicated Netbackup Interface?</th><th>Choose Profile (&lt;Application ISO NAME&gt;)</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>HP DL360 RMS , HP BL460 Gen 6 Blade</td><td>No</td><td><b>DSR_NOAMP</b></td></tr> <tr> <td>HP DL360 RMS , HP BL460 Gen 6 Blade</td><td>Yes</td><td><b>DSR_NOAMP_NBD</b></td></tr> <tr> <td>HP DL380 Gen 8 RMS, HP BL460 Gen 9 RMS, HP BL460 Gen 8 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 9 Blade</td><td>No</td><td><b>DSR_NOAMP_LARGE</b></td></tr> <tr> <td>HP DL380 Gen 8 RMS, HP BL460 Gen 9 RMS, HP BL460 Gen 8 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 9 Blade</td><td>Yes</td><td><b>DSR_NOAMP_LARGE_NBD</b></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Note:</b> Application_ISO_NAME is the name of the DSR Application ISO to be installed on this NOAM</p> <p>Press <b>Select Profile</b>.</p> <p>Press <b>Create</b></p> <p><input type="button" value="Create"/></p>	NOAM VM TVOE Hardware Type(s)	Dedicated Netbackup Interface?	Choose Profile (<Application ISO NAME>)	HP DL360 RMS , HP BL460 Gen 6 Blade	No	<b>DSR_NOAMP</b>	HP DL360 RMS , HP BL460 Gen 6 Blade	Yes	<b>DSR_NOAMP_NBD</b>	HP DL380 Gen 8 RMS, HP BL460 Gen 9 RMS, HP BL460 Gen 8 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 9 Blade	No	<b>DSR_NOAMP_LARGE</b>	HP DL380 Gen 8 RMS, HP BL460 Gen 9 RMS, HP BL460 Gen 8 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 9 Blade	Yes	<b>DSR_NOAMP_LARGE_NBD</b>
NOAM VM TVOE Hardware Type(s)	Dedicated Netbackup Interface?	Choose Profile (<Application ISO NAME>)															
HP DL360 RMS , HP BL460 Gen 6 Blade	No	<b>DSR_NOAMP</b>															
HP DL360 RMS , HP BL460 Gen 6 Blade	Yes	<b>DSR_NOAMP_NBD</b>															
HP DL380 Gen 8 RMS, HP BL460 Gen 9 RMS, HP BL460 Gen 8 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 9 Blade	No	<b>DSR_NOAMP_LARGE</b>															
HP DL380 Gen 8 RMS, HP BL460 Gen 9 RMS, HP BL460 Gen 8 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 9 Blade	Yes	<b>DSR_NOAMP_LARGE_NBD</b>															

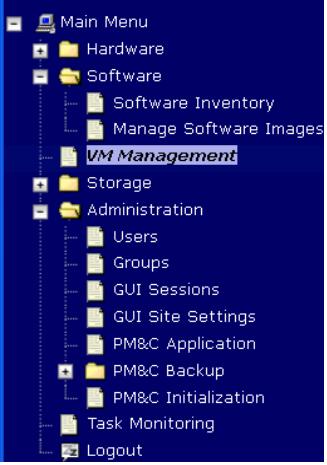
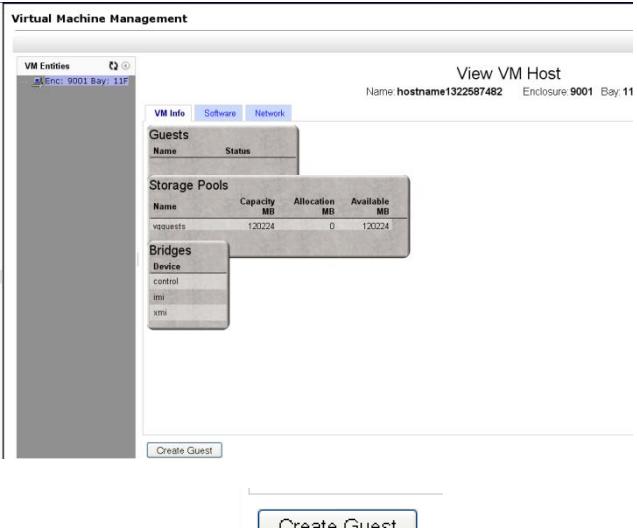
## Procedure 5 Create NOAM Guest VMs

4	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Wait for Guest Creation to Complete</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Task Monitoring</b> to monitor the progress of the guest creation task. A separate task will appear for each guest creation that you have launched.</p> <p>Wait or refresh the screen until you see that the guest creation task has completed successfully.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th><th>Task</th><th>Target</th><th>Status</th><th>Running Time</th><th>Start Time</th><th>Progress</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1739</td><td>VirtAction: Create</td><td>Enc:9001 Bay:11F Guest: DSR_NOAMP</td><td>Guest creation completed (DSR_NOAMP)</td><td>0:00:04</td><td>2011-11-29 20:36:11</td><td>100%</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	ID	Task	Target	Status	Running Time	Start Time	Progress	1739	VirtAction: Create	Enc:9001 Bay:11F Guest: DSR_NOAMP	Guest creation completed (DSR_NOAMP)	0:00:04	2011-11-29 20:36:11	100%
ID	Task	Target	Status	Running Time	Start Time	Progress										
1739	VirtAction: Create	Enc:9001 Bay:11F Guest: DSR_NOAMP	Guest creation completed (DSR_NOAMP)	0:00:04	2011-11-29 20:36:11	100%										
5	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Verify Guest Machine is Running</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; VM Management</b></p> <p>Select the TVOE server blade on which the guest machine was just created.</p> <p>Look at the list of guests present on the blade and verify that you see a guest that matches the name you configured and that its status is <b>“Running”</b>.</p> <p><b>Virtual Machine Management</b></p>  <p>VM Creation for this guest is complete. Repeat from <b>Step 2</b> for any remaining NOAM VMs (for instance, the standby NOAM) that must be created.</p>														

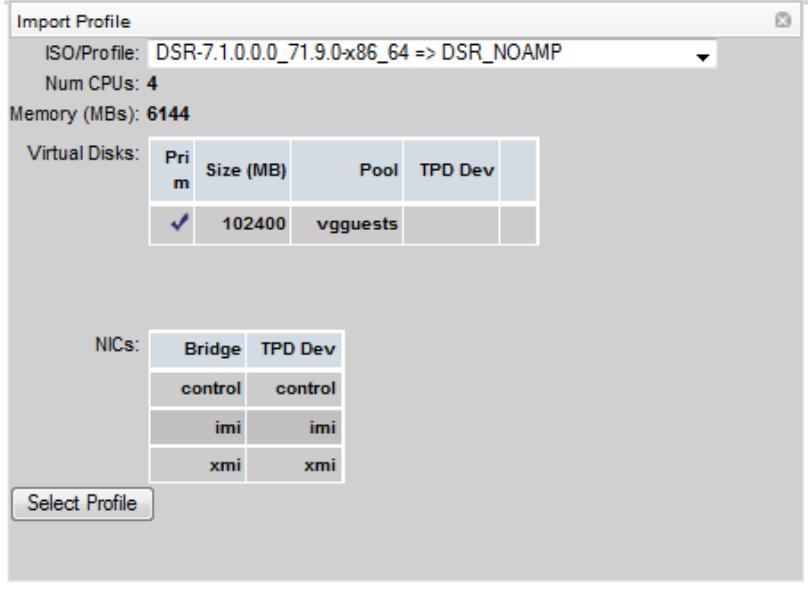
## Procedure 6 Create SOAM Guest VMs

<b>S</b> <b>T</b> <b>E</b> <b>P</b> <b>#</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps needed to create a DSR SOAM virtual machine (referred to as a “guest”) on a TVOE server blade. It must be repeated for every SOAM server you wish to install.</p> <p><b>Prerequisite:</b> TVOE has been installed and configured on the target blade server.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b>  <b>Login</b></p> <p>Open web browser and enter:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; width: 100%;"> <a href="http://&lt;PMAC_Mgmt_Network_IP&gt;">http://&lt;PMAC_Mgmt_Network_IP&gt;</a> </div> <p>Login as <b>pmacadmin</b> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Oracle System Login</b></p> <p style="text-align: right; font-size: small;">Tue Mar 17 13:49:25 2015 UTC</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px; margin: 10px auto; width: fit-content;"> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Log In</b></p> <p>Enter your username and password to log in</p> <p style="text-align: center;"> <input type="text" value="pmacadmin"/> Username: pmacadmin  <input type="password" value="*****"/> Password: *****  <input type="checkbox"/> Change password  <input type="button" value="Log In"/> </p> </div> <p style="text-align: center; font-size: small;">Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0, 9.0, or 10.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies.</p> <p style="text-align: center; font-size: small;">Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</p> <p style="text-align: center; font-size: small;">Copyright © 2010, 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</p> </div>

## Procedure 6 Create SOAM Guest VMs

<p>2 <input type="checkbox"/> <b>PMAC GUI:</b> Navigate to VM Management of the Target Server Blade</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; VM Management</b></p> <p></p> <p>Select the TVOE server blade or rack mounted server from the <b>VM Entities</b> listing on the left side of the screen. The selected server's guest machine configuration will then be displayed in the remaining area of the window.</p> <p></p> <p><b>Click Create Guest</b></p>
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Procedure 6 Create SOAM Guest VMs

3	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>PMAC GUI:</b> Configure VM Guest Parameters	<p>Select <b>Import Profile</b></p>  <p>From the “<b>ISO/Profile</b>” drop-down box, select the entry that matches depending on the hardware that your SOAM VM TVOE server is running on and your preference for NetBackup interfaces:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th><b>SOAM VM TVOE Hardware Type(s)</b></th><th><b>Dedicated Netbackup Interface?</b></th><th><b>Choose Profile (&lt;Application ISO NAME&gt;)</b></th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>HP BL460 Gen 8 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 6 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 9 Blade</td><td>No</td><td><b>DSR_SOAM</b></td></tr> <tr> <td>HP BL460 Gen 8 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 6 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 9 Blade</td><td>Yes</td><td><b>DSR_SOAM_NBD</b></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Note: Application_ISO_NAME is the name of the DSR Application ISO to be installed on this SOAM</p> <p>Press <b>Select Profile</b>.</p> <p>You can edit the name, if you wish. For instance: “<b>DSR_SOAM_A</b>,” or <b>DSR_SOAM_B</b>. (This will not become the ultimate hostname. It is just an internal tag for the VM host manager.)</p> <p>Press <b>Create</b></p> <p><input type="button" value="Create"/></p>	<b>SOAM VM TVOE Hardware Type(s)</b>	<b>Dedicated Netbackup Interface?</b>	<b>Choose Profile (&lt;Application ISO NAME&gt;)</b>	HP BL460 Gen 8 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 6 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 9 Blade	No	<b>DSR_SOAM</b>	HP BL460 Gen 8 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 6 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 9 Blade	Yes	<b>DSR_SOAM_NBD</b>
<b>SOAM VM TVOE Hardware Type(s)</b>	<b>Dedicated Netbackup Interface?</b>	<b>Choose Profile (&lt;Application ISO NAME&gt;)</b>									
HP BL460 Gen 8 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 6 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 9 Blade	No	<b>DSR_SOAM</b>									
HP BL460 Gen 8 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 6 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 9 Blade	Yes	<b>DSR_SOAM_NBD</b>									

## Procedure 6 Create SOAM Guest VMs

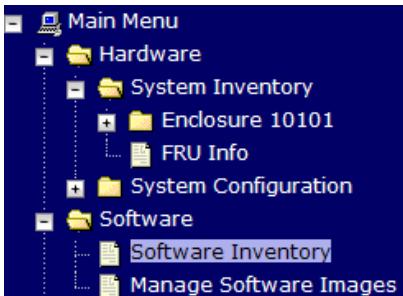
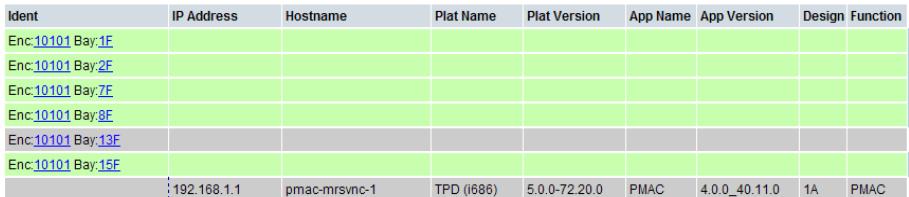
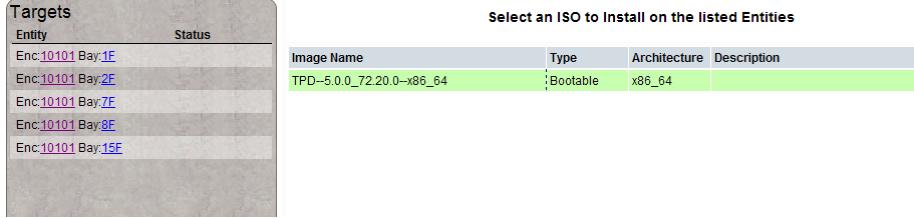
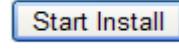
4	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Wait for Guest Creation to Complete</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Task Monitoring</b> to monitor the progress of the guest creation task. A separate task will appear for each guest creation that you have launched.</p> <p>Wait or refresh the screen until you see that the guest creation task has completed successfully.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th><th>Task</th><th>Target</th><th>Status</th><th>Running Time</th><th>Start Time</th><th>Progress</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1739</td><td>VirtAction: Create</td><td>Enc:9001 Bay:11F Guest: DSR_NOAMP</td><td>Guest creation completed (DSR_NOAMP)</td><td>0:00:04</td><td>2011-11-29 20:36:11</td><td>100%</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	ID	Task	Target	Status	Running Time	Start Time	Progress	1739	VirtAction: Create	Enc:9001 Bay:11F Guest: DSR_NOAMP	Guest creation completed (DSR_NOAMP)	0:00:04	2011-11-29 20:36:11	100%
ID	Task	Target	Status	Running Time	Start Time	Progress										
1739	VirtAction: Create	Enc:9001 Bay:11F Guest: DSR_NOAMP	Guest creation completed (DSR_NOAMP)	0:00:04	2011-11-29 20:36:11	100%										
5	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Verify Guest Machine is Running</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; VM Management</b></p> <p>Select the TVOE server blade on which the guest machine was just created.</p> <p>Look at the list of guests present on the blade and verify that you see a guest that matches the name you configured and that its status is <b>“Running”</b>.</p> <p><b>Virtual Machine Management</b></p>  <p>VM Entities</p> <p>View VM Guest</p> <p>Name: Jetta-NO-A Host: RMS: Jetta-A</p> <p>Current Power State: <b>Running</b> On Change</p> <p>VM Info Software Network Media</p> <p>Num vCPUs: 4 Memory (MBs): 6,144 VM UUID: 913ccfff-ba1f-4844-954f-648ab2fbacda Enable Virtual Watchdog: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p>VM Creation for this guest is complete. Repeat from <b>Step 2</b> for any remaining NOAM VMs (for instance, the standby SOAM) that must be created.</p>														

## 4.4 Install Application Software on Servers

### Procedure 7 IPM Blades and VMs

<b>S</b> <b>T</b> <b>E</b> <b>P</b> <b>#</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to install TPD on Blade servers and Blade server guest VMs</p> <p><b>Prerequisite:</b> Enclosures containing the blade servers targeted for IPM that have been configured.</p> <p><b>Prerequisite:</b> TVOE has been installed and configured on Blade servers that will host DSR NOAM VMs.</p> <p><b>Prerequisite:</b> DSR NOAM and SOAM Guest VMs have been created successfully.</p> <p><b>Needed material:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- TPD Media (64-bits)</li></ul> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Login</p> <p>Open web browser and enter:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;"><b><a href="http://&lt;PMAC_Mgmt_Network_IP&gt;">http://&lt;PMAC_Mgmt_Network_IP&gt;</a></b></div> <p>Login as <b>pmacadmin</b> user:</p>

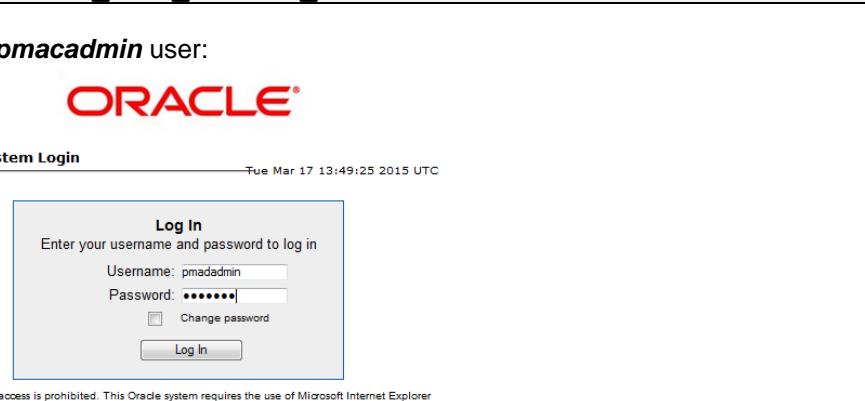
## Procedure 7 IPM Blades and VMs

<p>2 <b>PMAC GUI:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Select Servers for OS install</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Software -&gt; Software Inventory.</b></p> <p></p> <p>Select the servers (VMs, IPFEs, MPs, Etc.) you want to IPM. If you want to install the same OS image to more than one server, you may select multiple servers by clicking multiple rows individually. Selected rows will be highlighted in green.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> VM's will have the text "<i>Guest: &lt;VM_GUEST_NAME&gt;</i>" underneath the physical blade or RMS that hosts them.</p> <p></p> <p>Click on <b>Install OS</b></p> <p></p>
<p>3 <b>PMAC GUI:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Initiate OS Install</p>	<p>The left side of this screen shows the servers to be affected by this OS installation. From the list of available bootable images on the right side of the screen, select one OS image to install to all of the selected servers.</p> <p></p> <p>Click on <b>Start Install</b>, a confirmation window will pop up, click on <b>Ok</b> to proceed with the install.</p> <p></p>

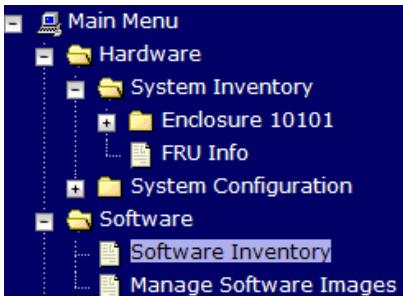
## Procedure 7 IPM Blades and VMs

4	<b>PMAC GUI:</b> Monitor OS Install	Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Task Monitoring</b> to monitor the progress of the OS Installation background task. A separate task will appear for each blade affected.  When the installation is complete, the task will change to green and the Progress bar will indicate "100%".
---	----------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

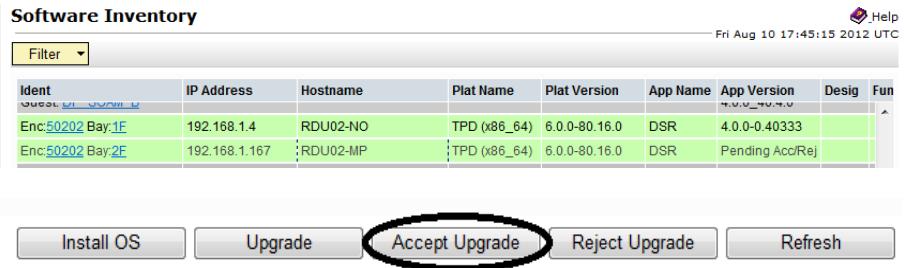
## Procedure 8 Install the Application Software on Blades

<b>S</b> <b>T</b> <b>E</b> <b>P</b> <b>#</b>	This procedure will provide the steps to install Diameter Signaling Router on the Blade servers. <b>Prerequisite:</b> <b>Procedure 7</b> has been completed.  Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.  If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.
1	<b>PMAC GUI:</b> Login  Login as <b>pmacadmin</b> user: 

## Procedure 8 Install the Application Software on Blades

<input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Select Servers for Application install</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Software -&gt; Software Inventory.</b></p>  <p>Select the servers on which the application is to be installed. If you want to install the same application image to more than one server, you may select multiple servers by clicking multiple rows individually. Selected rows will be highlighted in green.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> VM's will have the text "<b>Guest: &lt;VM_GUEST_NAME&gt;</b>" underneath the physical blade that hosts them.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Ident</th><th>IP Address</th><th>Hostname</th><th>Plat Name</th><th>Plat Version</th><th>App Name</th><th>App Version</th><th>Design</th><th>Fur</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Enc:10101 Bay:1F</td><td>192.168.1.247</td><td>hostname1316543479</td><td>TPD (x86_64)</td><td>5.0.0-72.20.0</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Enc:10101 Bay:2F</td><td>192.168.1.248</td><td>hostname1316543574</td><td>TPD (x86_64)</td><td>5.0.0-72.20.0</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Enc:10101 Bay:7F</td><td>192.168.1.250</td><td>hostname1316543105</td><td>TPD (x86_64)</td><td>5.0.0-72.20.0</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Enc:10101 Bay:8F</td><td>192.168.1.249</td><td>hostname1316543051</td><td>TPD (x86_64)</td><td>5.0.0-72.20.0</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Enc:10101 Bay:13F</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Enc:10101 Bay:15F</td><td>192.168.1.251</td><td>hostname1316543058</td><td>TPD (x86_64)</td><td>5.0.0-72.20.0</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td></td><td>192.168.1.1</td><td>pmac-mrsvnc-1</td><td>TPD (i686)</td><td>5.0.0-72.20.0</td><td>PMAC</td><td>4.0.0_40.11.0</td><td>1A</td><td>PM</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Click on <b>Upgrade</b></p> <p><b>Install OS</b>   <b>Upgrade</b>   <b>Refresh</b></p>	Ident	IP Address	Hostname	Plat Name	Plat Version	App Name	App Version	Design	Fur	Enc:10101 Bay:1F	192.168.1.247	hostname1316543479	TPD (x86_64)	5.0.0-72.20.0					Enc:10101 Bay:2F	192.168.1.248	hostname1316543574	TPD (x86_64)	5.0.0-72.20.0					Enc:10101 Bay:7F	192.168.1.250	hostname1316543105	TPD (x86_64)	5.0.0-72.20.0					Enc:10101 Bay:8F	192.168.1.249	hostname1316543051	TPD (x86_64)	5.0.0-72.20.0					Enc:10101 Bay:13F									Enc:10101 Bay:15F	192.168.1.251	hostname1316543058	TPD (x86_64)	5.0.0-72.20.0						192.168.1.1	pmac-mrsvnc-1	TPD (i686)	5.0.0-72.20.0	PMAC	4.0.0_40.11.0	1A	PM
Ident	IP Address	Hostname	Plat Name	Plat Version	App Name	App Version	Design	Fur																																																																		
Enc:10101 Bay:1F	192.168.1.247	hostname1316543479	TPD (x86_64)	5.0.0-72.20.0																																																																						
Enc:10101 Bay:2F	192.168.1.248	hostname1316543574	TPD (x86_64)	5.0.0-72.20.0																																																																						
Enc:10101 Bay:7F	192.168.1.250	hostname1316543105	TPD (x86_64)	5.0.0-72.20.0																																																																						
Enc:10101 Bay:8F	192.168.1.249	hostname1316543051	TPD (x86_64)	5.0.0-72.20.0																																																																						
Enc:10101 Bay:13F																																																																										
Enc:10101 Bay:15F	192.168.1.251	hostname1316543058	TPD (x86_64)	5.0.0-72.20.0																																																																						
	192.168.1.1	pmac-mrsvnc-1	TPD (i686)	5.0.0-72.20.0	PMAC	4.0.0_40.11.0	1A	PM																																																																		
<input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Initiate Application Install</p>	<p>The left side of this screen shows the servers to be affected by this OS installation. From the list of available bootable images on the right side of the screen, select one OS image to install to all of the selected servers.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Targets</th> <th colspan="4">Select an ISO to Upgrade on the listed Entities</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Entity</th> <th>Status</th> <th>Image Name</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Architecture</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Enc:10101 Bay:1F</td> <td></td> <td>TPD-5.0.0_72.20.0-x86_64</td> <td>Bootable</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Enc:10101 Bay:2F</td> <td></td> <td>DSR-3.0.0_30.8.0-872-2329-101-x86_64</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Enc:10101 Bay:7F</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Enc:10101 Bay:8F</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Enc:10101 Bay:15F</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Click on <b>Start Upgrade</b>, a confirmation window will pop up, click on <b>Ok</b> to proceed with the install.</p> <p><b>Start Upgrade</b></p>	Targets		Select an ISO to Upgrade on the listed Entities				Entity	Status	Image Name	Type	Architecture	Description	Enc:10101 Bay:1F		TPD-5.0.0_72.20.0-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64		Enc:10101 Bay:2F		DSR-3.0.0_30.8.0-872-2329-101-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64		Enc:10101 Bay:7F						Enc:10101 Bay:8F						Enc:10101 Bay:15F																																			
Targets		Select an ISO to Upgrade on the listed Entities																																																																								
Entity	Status	Image Name	Type	Architecture	Description																																																																					
Enc:10101 Bay:1F		TPD-5.0.0_72.20.0-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64																																																																						
Enc:10101 Bay:2F		DSR-3.0.0_30.8.0-872-2329-101-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64																																																																						
Enc:10101 Bay:7F																																																																										
Enc:10101 Bay:8F																																																																										
Enc:10101 Bay:15F																																																																										

## Procedure 8 Install the Application Software on Blades

4	<b>PMAC GUI:</b> Monitor the installation status	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Task Monitoring</b> to monitor the progress of the Application Installation task. A separate task will appear for each blade affected.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th><th>Task</th><th>Target</th><th>Status</th><th>Running Time</th><th>Start Time</th><th>Progress</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>25</td><td>Upgrade</td><td>Enc:10101 Bay:1F</td><td>Task ID assigned</td><td>0:00:00</td><td>2011-09-20 14:36:08</td><td>40%</td></tr> <tr> <td>24</td><td>Upgrade</td><td>Enc:10101 Bay:8F</td><td>Task ID assigned</td><td>0:00:00</td><td>2011-09-20 14:36:08</td><td>40%</td></tr> <tr> <td>23</td><td>Upgrade</td><td>Enc:10101 Bay:ZF</td><td>Task ID assigned</td><td>0:00:01</td><td>2011-09-20 14:36:07</td><td>40%</td></tr> <tr> <td>22</td><td>Upgrade</td><td>Enc:10101 Bay:2F</td><td>Task ID assigned</td><td>0:00:00</td><td>2011-09-20 14:36:07</td><td>40%</td></tr> <tr> <td>21</td><td>Upgrade</td><td>Enc:10101 Bay:1F</td><td>Task ID assigned</td><td>0:00:00</td><td>2011-09-20 14:36:07</td><td>40%</td></tr> <tr> <td>20</td><td>Add Image</td><td></td><td>Done: 872-2329-101-3.0.0_30.8.0-DSR-x86_64</td><td>0:00:06</td><td>2011-09-20 14:24:41</td><td>100%</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>When the installation is complete, the task will change to green and the Progress bar will indicate "100%".</p>	ID	Task	Target	Status	Running Time	Start Time	Progress	25	Upgrade	Enc:10101 Bay:1F	Task ID assigned	0:00:00	2011-09-20 14:36:08	40%	24	Upgrade	Enc:10101 Bay:8F	Task ID assigned	0:00:00	2011-09-20 14:36:08	40%	23	Upgrade	Enc:10101 Bay:ZF	Task ID assigned	0:00:01	2011-09-20 14:36:07	40%	22	Upgrade	Enc:10101 Bay:2F	Task ID assigned	0:00:00	2011-09-20 14:36:07	40%	21	Upgrade	Enc:10101 Bay:1F	Task ID assigned	0:00:00	2011-09-20 14:36:07	40%	20	Add Image		Done: 872-2329-101-3.0.0_30.8.0-DSR-x86_64	0:00:06	2011-09-20 14:24:41	100%
ID	Task	Target	Status	Running Time	Start Time	Progress																																													
25	Upgrade	Enc:10101 Bay:1F	Task ID assigned	0:00:00	2011-09-20 14:36:08	40%																																													
24	Upgrade	Enc:10101 Bay:8F	Task ID assigned	0:00:00	2011-09-20 14:36:08	40%																																													
23	Upgrade	Enc:10101 Bay:ZF	Task ID assigned	0:00:01	2011-09-20 14:36:07	40%																																													
22	Upgrade	Enc:10101 Bay:2F	Task ID assigned	0:00:00	2011-09-20 14:36:07	40%																																													
21	Upgrade	Enc:10101 Bay:1F	Task ID assigned	0:00:00	2011-09-20 14:36:07	40%																																													
20	Add Image		Done: 872-2329-101-3.0.0_30.8.0-DSR-x86_64	0:00:06	2011-09-20 14:24:41	100%																																													
5	<b>PMAC GUI:</b> Accept/Reject Upgrade	<p>Navigate to <b>Software -&gt; Software Inventory</b> to accept the software installation. Select all the servers on which the application has been installed in the previous steps and click on <b>Accept Upgrade</b> as shown below.</p> <p>Note: On some RMS and Blade servers, the GUI may not provide the option to <b>accept/reject</b> upgrade. So first verify in "<b>task monitoring</b>" that the upgrade is not in progress, then manually accept or reject the upgrade by ssh'ing into the server and execute:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To accept:  <code>/var/TKLC/backout/accept</code></li> <li>• To reject:  <code>/var/TKLC/backout/reject</code></li> </ul>  <p><b>Note:</b> Once the upgrade has been accepted, the App version will change from "<b>Pending Acc/Rej</b>" to the version number of the application.</p>																																																	

## 4.5 Application Configuration: NOAMs

### Procedure 9 Configure the First NOAM NE and Server

<b>S</b> <b>T</b> <b>E</b> <b>P</b> <b>#</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the First NOAM server.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>																
<b>1</b> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>Save the NOAM Network Data to an XML file</b></p> <p>Using a text editor, create a NOAM Network Element file that describes the networking of the target install environment of your first NOAM server.</p> <p>Select an appropriate file name and save the file to a known location on your computer.</p> <p>A suggested filename format is "<b>Appname_NEname_NetworkElement.XML</b>", so for example a DSR2 NOAM network element XML file would have a filename "<b>DSR2_NOAM_NetworkElement.xml</b>".</p> <p>Alternatively, you can update the sample DSR 7.0/7.1 Network Element file. It can be found on the management server at:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;"> <code>/usr/TKLC/smac/etc/SAMPLE-NetworkElement.xml</code> </div> <p>A sample XML file can also be found in <b>Appendix A: Sample Network Element and Hardware Profiles</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The following limitations apply when specifying a Network Element name: A 1-32-character string. Valid characters are alphanumeric and underscore. Must contain at least one alpha and must not start with a digit.</p>																
<b>2</b> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>Exchange SSH keys between PMAC and first NOAM server</b></p> <p>Use the PMAC GUI to determine the Control Network IP address of the server that is to be the first NOAM server. From the PMAC GUI, navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Software -&gt; Software Inventory</b>.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">RMS: Jetta-A</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">192.168.1.17</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">Jetta-NO-1</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">TPD (x86_64)</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">7.0.0.0-86.14.0</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">DSR</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">7.1.0.0-71.11.0</td> <td style="padding: 2px;"></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">Guest: Jetta-NO-A</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </table> </div> <p>Note the IP address for the first NOAM server.</p> <p>Login to the PMAC terminal as the <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>From a terminal window connection on the PMAC as the <b>admusr</b> user, exchange SSH keys for <b>admusr</b> between the PMAC and the 1<sup>st</sup> NOAM server using the keyexchange utility, using the Control network IP address for the NOAM server. When prompted for the password, enter the password for the <b>admusr</b> user of the NOAM server.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;"> <code>\$ keyexchange admusr@&lt;NO1_Control_IP Address&gt;</code> </div>	RMS: Jetta-A	192.168.1.17	Jetta-NO-1	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.0.0-86.14.0	DSR	7.1.0.0-71.11.0		Guest: Jetta-NO-A							
RMS: Jetta-A	192.168.1.17	Jetta-NO-1	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.0.0-86.14.0	DSR	7.1.0.0-71.11.0											
Guest: Jetta-NO-A																	

## Procedure 9 Configure the First NOAM NE and Server

3	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Connect a Web Browser to the NOAM GUI</b></p>	<p>Plug a laptop Ethernet cable onto an unused, un-configured port on the 4948 switch (<i>if available in your installation</i>) or use SSH Tunneling through the PMAC to connect the laptop to the NOAM server.</p> <p>If you are using tunneling, then you can skip the rest of this step and instead complete the instructions in <b>Appendix G: Accessing the NOAM GUI using SSH Tunneling with Putty</b> (for using Putty) or <b>Appendix H: Accessing the NOAM GUI using SSH Tunneling with OpenSSH for Windows</b> (for OpenSSH). OpenSSH is recommended if you are using a Windows 7 PC.</p> <p>From the PMAC, enable the switch port that the laptop is plugged into.</p> <p>Enable that laptop Ethernet port to acquire a DHCP address and then access the NOAM-“A” GUI via its control IP address.</p>
4	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM GUI: Login</b></p>	<p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p>  <p>Oracle System Login</p> <p>Fri Mar 20 12:29:52 2015 EDT</p> <p><b>Log In</b> Enter your username and password to log in</p> <p>Username: <input type="text" value="guiadmin"/></p> <p>Password: <input type="password" value="*****"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Change password</p> <p><input type="button" value="Log In"/></p> <p>Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</p> <p>Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0, 9.0, or 10.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies.</p> <p><small>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</small></p>

#### Procedure 9 Configure the First NOAM NE and Server

Network Element				
	Network Name	Network Address	Netmask	VLAN ID
	INTERNALXMI	10.240.10.32	255.255.255.224	3
	INTERNALIMI	10.240.10.0	255.255.255.224	4

## Procedure 9 Configure the First NOAM NE and Server

<input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>6 Map Services to Networks</b></p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt;Configuration-&gt; Services</b>.</p> <p>Select the <b>Edit</b> button and set the Services as shown in the table below:</p>																																																
	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Name</th> <th style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Intra-NE Network</th> <th style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Inter-NE Network</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">OAM</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">&lt;IMI Network&gt;</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">&lt;XMI Network&gt;</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Replication</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">&lt;IMI Network&gt;</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">&lt;XMI Network&gt;</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Signaling</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Unspecified</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Unspecified</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">HA_Secondary</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Unspecified</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Unspecified</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">HA_MP_Secondary</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Unspecified</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Unspecified</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Replication_MP</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">&lt;IMI Network&gt;</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Unspecified</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">ComAgent</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">&lt;IMI Network&gt;</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Unspecified</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>For example, if your IMI network is named <b>IMI</b> and your XMI network is named <b>XMI</b>, then your services should config should look like the following:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Name</th> <th style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Intra-NE Network</th> <th style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Inter-NE Network</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">OAM</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">IMI</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">XMI</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Replication</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">IMI</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">XMI</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Signaling</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Unspecified</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Unspecified</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">HA_Secondary</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Unspecified</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Unspecified</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">HA_MP_Secondary</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Unspecified</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Unspecified</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Replication_MP</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">IMI</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Unspecified</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">ComAgent</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">IMI</td> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 2px;">Unspecified</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Select the <b>Ok</b> button to apply the Service-to-Network selections.</p> <p>Press <b>Ok</b> for the following prompt to restart all servers.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px; width: fit-content; margin: auto;"> <p>The page at <a href="https://localhost">https://localhost</a> says:</p> <p>You must restart all Servers to apply any services changes, ComAgent</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p> </div>	Name	Intra-NE Network	Inter-NE Network	OAM	<IMI Network>	<XMI Network>	Replication	<IMI Network>	<XMI Network>	Signaling	Unspecified	Unspecified	HA_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified	HA_MP_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified	Replication_MP	<IMI Network>	Unspecified	ComAgent	<IMI Network>	Unspecified	Name	Intra-NE Network	Inter-NE Network	OAM	IMI	XMI	Replication	IMI	XMI	Signaling	Unspecified	Unspecified	HA_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified	HA_MP_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified	Replication_MP	IMI	Unspecified	ComAgent	IMI	Unspecified
Name	Intra-NE Network	Inter-NE Network																																															
OAM	<IMI Network>	<XMI Network>																																															
Replication	<IMI Network>	<XMI Network>																																															
Signaling	Unspecified	Unspecified																																															
HA_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified																																															
HA_MP_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified																																															
Replication_MP	<IMI Network>	Unspecified																																															
ComAgent	<IMI Network>	Unspecified																																															
Name	Intra-NE Network	Inter-NE Network																																															
OAM	IMI	XMI																																															
Replication	IMI	XMI																																															
Signaling	Unspecified	Unspecified																																															
HA_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified																																															
HA_MP_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified																																															
Replication_MP	IMI	Unspecified																																															
ComAgent	IMI	Unspecified																																															

## Procedure 9 Configure the First NOAM NE and Server

7	Insert the 1st NOAM server	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Servers.</b></p> <p>Select the <b>Insert</b> button to insert the new NOAM server into servers table (the first or server).</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Attribute</th><th>Value</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Hostname</td><td>NO-Server1 *</td><td>Unique name for the server. [Default string. Valid characters are alphanumeric and end with an alphanumeric character.]</td></tr> <tr> <td>Role</td><td>NETWORK OAM&amp;P *</td><td>Select the function of the server</td></tr> <tr> <td>System ID</td><td>NO-Server1</td><td>System ID for the NOAMP or SOAI. 64-character string. Valid value is</td></tr> <tr> <td>Hardware Profile</td><td>DSR TVOE Guest</td><td>Hardware profile of the server</td></tr> <tr> <td>Network Element Name</td><td>NOAMMEMORYTEST *</td><td>Select the network element</td></tr> <tr> <td>Location</td><td></td><td>Location description [Default = "", value is any text string.]</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Fill in the fields as follows:</p> <p><b>Hostname:</b> &lt;Hostname&gt;</p> <p><b>Role:</b> <b>NETWORK OAM&amp;P</b></p> <p><b>System ID:</b> &lt;Site System ID&gt;</p> <p><b>Hardware Profile:</b> <b>DSR TVOE Guest</b></p> <p><b>Network Element Name:</b> <b>[Choose NE from Drop Down Box]</b></p> <p>The network interface fields will now become available with selection choices based on the chosen hardware profile and network element</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="3">Interfaces:</th></tr> <tr> <th>Network</th><th>IP Address</th><th>Interface</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>INTERNALXMI (10.240.84.128/25)</td><td>10.240.84.155</td><td>xmi <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)</td></tr> <tr> <td>INTERNALIMI (10.240.85.0/26)</td><td>10.240.85.10</td><td>imi <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Ok</b> <b>Apply</b> <b>Cancel</b></p> <p>Fill in the server IP addresses for the XMI network. Select <b>xmi</b> for the interface. <b>Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.</b></p> <p>Fill in the server IP addresses for the IMI network. Select <b>imi</b> for the interface. <b>Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.</b></p> <p>Next, add the following NTP servers:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>NTP Server</th><th>Preferred?</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>&lt;TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(NO1)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(NO1)&gt;</td><td>Yes</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Select the <b>Ok</b> button when you have completed entering all the server data.</p>	Attribute	Value	Description	Hostname	NO-Server1 *	Unique name for the server. [Default string. Valid characters are alphanumeric and end with an alphanumeric character.]	Role	NETWORK OAM&P *	Select the function of the server	System ID	NO-Server1	System ID for the NOAMP or SOAI. 64-character string. Valid value is	Hardware Profile	DSR TVOE Guest	Hardware profile of the server	Network Element Name	NOAMMEMORYTEST *	Select the network element	Location		Location description [Default = "", value is any text string.]	Interfaces:			Network	IP Address	Interface	INTERNALXMI (10.240.84.128/25)	10.240.84.155	xmi <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)	INTERNALIMI (10.240.85.0/26)	10.240.85.10	imi <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)	NTP Server	Preferred?	<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(NO1)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(NO1)>	Yes
Attribute	Value	Description																																					
Hostname	NO-Server1 *	Unique name for the server. [Default string. Valid characters are alphanumeric and end with an alphanumeric character.]																																					
Role	NETWORK OAM&P *	Select the function of the server																																					
System ID	NO-Server1	System ID for the NOAMP or SOAI. 64-character string. Valid value is																																					
Hardware Profile	DSR TVOE Guest	Hardware profile of the server																																					
Network Element Name	NOAMMEMORYTEST *	Select the network element																																					
Location		Location description [Default = "", value is any text string.]																																					
Interfaces:																																							
Network	IP Address	Interface																																					
INTERNALXMI (10.240.84.128/25)	10.240.84.155	xmi <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)																																					
INTERNALIMI (10.240.85.0/26)	10.240.85.10	imi <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)																																					
NTP Server	Preferred?																																						
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(NO1)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(NO1)>	Yes																																						
8	Export the Initial Configuration	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Servers.</b></p> <p>From the GUI screen, select the NOAM server and then select <b>Export</b> to generate the initial configuration data for that server.</p> <p><b>Insert</b> <b>Edit</b> <b>Delete</b> <b>Export</b> <b>Report</b></p>																																					

## Procedure 9 Configure the First NOAM NE and Server

9	<b>NOAM iLO:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Copy Configuration File to 1 <sup>st</sup> NOAM Server	<p>Obtain a terminal window to the 1<sup>st</sup> NOAM server, logging in as the <b>admusr</b> user. (See <b>Appendix F: PMAC/NOAM/SOAM Console iLO Access</b> for instructions on how to access the NOAM from iLO)</p> <p>Copy the configuration file created in the previous step from the /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt directory on the 1<sup>st</sup> NOAM to the /var/tmp directory. The configuration file will have a filename like TKLCConfigData.&lt;hostname&gt;.sh. The following is an example:</p> <pre>\$ sudo cp /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/TKLCConfigData.blade01.sh /var/tmp/TKLCConfigData.sh</pre>
10	<b>NOAM iLO:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Wait for Configuration to Complete	<p>The automatic configuration daemon will look for the file named <b>“TKLCConfigData.sh”</b> in the /var/tmp directory, implement the configuration in the file, and then prompt the user to reboot the server.</p> <p>Wait to be prompted to reboot the server, but <b>DO NOT</b> reboot the server, it will be rebooted later on in this procedure.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Ignore the warning about removing the USB key, since no USB key is present. .</p>
11	<b>NOAM iLO:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Set the Time zone and Reboot the Server	<p>From the command line prompt, execute <b>set_ini_tz.pl</b>. This will set the system time zone. The following command example uses the America/New_York time zone.</p> <p>Replace as appropriate with the time zone you have selected for this installation. For a full list of valid time zones, see <b>Appendix I: List of Frequently used Time Zones</b>.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/appworks/bin/set_ini_tz.pl "America/New_York" &gt;/dev/null 2&gt;&amp;1</pre> <pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre>

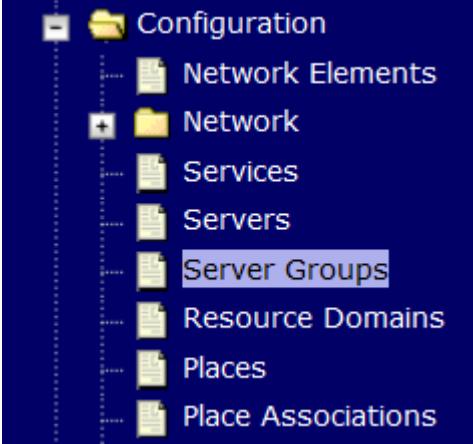
## Procedure 9 Configure the First NOAM NE and Server

12	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>1<sup>st</sup> NOAM:</b> Configure Networking for Dedicated NetBackup Interface (Optional)	<p><b>Note:</b> You will only execute this step if your NOAM is using a dedicated Ethernet interface for NetBackup.</p> <p>Obtain a terminal window to the 1<sup>st</sup> NOAM server, logging in as the <b>admusr</b> user.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=netbackup --type=Ethernet --onboot=yes --address=&lt;NO1_NetBackup_IP_Adress&gt; --netmask=&lt;NO1_NetBackup_NetMask&gt;</pre> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --route=net --device=netbackup --address=&lt;NO1_NetBackup_Network_ID&gt; --netmask=&lt;NO1_NetBackup_NetMask&gt; --gateway=&lt;NO1_NetBackup_Gateway_IP_Address&gt;</pre>
13	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>1<sup>st</sup> NOAM Server:</b> Verify Server Health	<p>Execute the following command on the 1<sup>st</sup> NOAM server and make sure that no errors are returned:</p> <pre>\$ sudo syscheck Running modules in class hardware...OK Running modules in class disk...OK Running modules in class net...OK Running modules in class system...OK Running modules in class proc...OK LOG LOCATION: /var/TKLC/log/syscheck/fail_log</pre>

## Procedure 10 Configure the NOAM Server Group

<b>S</b> <b>T</b> <b>E</b> <b>P</b> <b>#</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the NOAM server group.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM GUI:</b> Login</p> <p>Establish a GUI session on the first NOAM server by using the XMI IP address of the first NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;"><b>http://&lt;NO1_XMI_IP_Address&gt;</b></div> <p>Login as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p> 

## Procedure 10 Configure the NOAM Server Group

2	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM GUI:</b> Enter NOAM Server Group Data	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Server Groups</b></p>  <p>Select <b>Insert</b> and fill the following fields:</p> <p><b>Insert</b> <b>Edit</b> <b>Delete</b> <b>Report</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Server Group Name:</b> &lt;Enter Server Group Name&gt;</li><li>• <b>Level:</b> <b>A</b></li><li>• <b>Parent :</b> <b>None</b></li><li>• <b>Function:</b> <b>DSR (Active/Standby Pair)</b></li><li>• <b>WAN Replication Connection Count:</b> <b>Use Default Value</b></li></ul> <p>Select <b>OK</b> when all fields are filled in.</p>
---	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

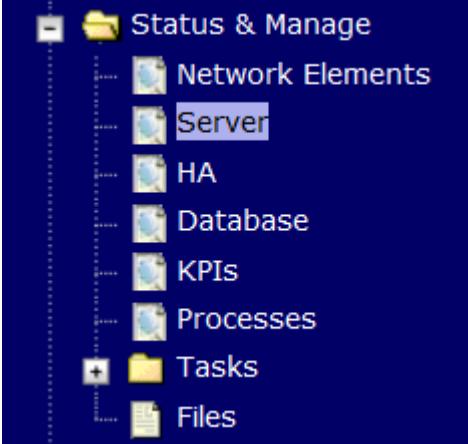
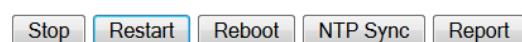
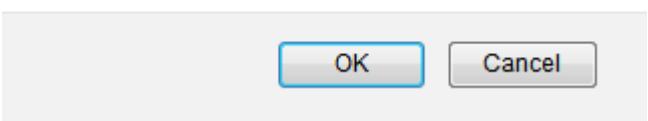
#### Procedure 10 Configure the NOAM Server Group

3	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM GUI:</b> Edit the NOAM Server Group</p>	<p>From the GUI <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Server Groups.</b></p> <p>Select the new server group, and then select <b>Edit</b></p> <p><b>Insert</b> <b>Edit</b> <b>Delete</b> <b>Report</b></p> <p>Select the Network Element that represents the NOAM.</p> <table border="1"><thead><tr><th colspan="3">NO_900060103</th></tr><tr><th>Server</th><th>SG Inclusion</th><th>Preferred HA Role</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>HPC6NO</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr></tbody></table> <p>In the portion of the screen that lists the servers for the server group, find the NOAM server being configured.</p> <p>Click the <b>Include in SG</b> checkbox.</p> <p>Leave other boxes blank.</p> <p>Press <b>OK</b></p>	NO_900060103			Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	HPC6NO	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare
NO_900060103											
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role									
HPC6NO	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare									

## Procedure 10 Configure the NOAM Server Group

4	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM:</b> Verify NOAM blade server role</p>	<p>From terminal window to the iLO of the first NOAM server, execute the following command:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;"><pre>\$ha.mystate</pre></div> <p>Verify that the <b>DbReplication</b> and <b>VIP</b> item under the <b>resourceId</b> column has a value of <b>Active</b> under the <b>role</b> column.</p> <p>You might have to wait a few minutes for it to become in that state.</p> <p>Example:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; background-color: #f0f0f0;"><pre>[admusr@Jetta-NO-1 ~]\$ ha.mystate       resourceId  role      node      subResources      lastUpdate       DbReplication Active    A1027.209      0 0316:161158.499                       VIP      Active    A1027.209      0 0316:161158.501       pSbrBBaseRepl  OOS      A1027.209      0 0316:155546.074       pSbrBindingRes OOS      A1027.209      0 0316:155546.074       pSbrSBaseRepl  OOS      A1027.209      0 0316:155546.075       pSbrSessionRes OOS      A1027.209      0 0316:155546.075       PSBR_B_Proc   OOS      A1027.209      0 0316:155546.074       PSBR_S_Proc   OOS      A1027.209      0 0316:155546.075       CacdProcessRes Active   A1027.209      0 0316:161158.501       DA_MP_Leader   OOS      A1027.209      0 0316:155546.071       DSR_SLDB      OOS      A1027.209      0-63 0316:155546.071       VIP_DA_MP    OOS      A1027.209      0-63 0316:155546.072       EXGSTACK_Process OOS    A1027.209      0-63 0316:155546.072       DSR_Process   OOS      A1027.209      0-63 0316:155546.072       CAPM_HELP_Proc OOS    A1027.209      0 0316:155546.070       DSROAM_Proc   Active   A1027.209      0 0316:161158.497       CAPM_PSFS_Proc OOS    A1027.209      0 0316:155546.070       SS7_MP_Process_HA_Proc OOS A1027.209      0-63 0316:155546.073       SS7_MP_Process OOS    A1027.209      0-63 0316:155546.074</pre></div>
---	----------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

#### Procedure 10 Configure the NOAM Server Group

5	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM GUI:</b> Restart NOAM Server</p>	<p>From the NOAM GUI, select the <b>Main menu</b> -&gt; <b>Status &amp; Manage</b> -&gt; <b>Server</b> menu.</p>  <p>Select the NOAM server. Select the <b>Restart</b> button.</p>  <p>Answer <b>OK</b> to the confirmation popup.</p>  <p>Wait for restart to complete.</p>
---	--------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Procedure 11 Configure the Second NOAM Server

<b>S</b> <b>T</b> <b>E</b> <b>P</b> <b>#</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the Second NOAM server.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
<b>1</b> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>Exchange SSH keys between PMAC and first NOAM server</b></p> <p>Use the PMAC GUI to determine the Control Network IP address of the server that is to be the second NOAM server. From the PMAC GUI, navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Software -&gt; Software Inventory</b>.</p> <p>Note the IP address for the Second NOAM server.</p> <p>Login to the PMAC terminal as the <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>From a terminal window connection on the PMAC as the <b>admusr</b> user, exchange SSH keys for <b>admusr</b> between the PMAC and the 2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM server using the keyexchange utility, using the Control network IP address for the NOAM server. When prompted for the password, enter the password for the <b>admusr</b> user of the NOAM server.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$ keyexchange admusr@&lt;NO2_Control_IP_Address&gt;</pre> </div> <p><b>Note:</b> if keyexchange fails, <b>edit /home/admusr/.ssh/known_hosts</b> and remove blank lines, and retry the keyexchange commands.</p>
<b>2</b> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM GUI: Login</b></p> <p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the first NOAM server by using the XMI IP address of the first NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b><a href="https://&lt;NO1_XMI_IP_Address&gt;">https://&lt;NO1_XMI_IP_Address&gt;</a></b></p> </div> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p> 

### Procedure 11 Configure the Second NOAM Server

<input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>3 NOAM GUI:</b> Insert the 2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM server</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Servers.</b></p> <p>Select the <b>Insert</b> button to insert the 2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM server into servers table (the first or server).</p> <p><b>Adding a new server</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Attribute</th><th>Value</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Hostname</td><td>NO-Server2 *</td></tr> <tr> <td>Role</td><td>NETWORK OAM&amp;P *</td></tr> <tr> <td>System ID</td><td>NO-Server2</td></tr> <tr> <td>Hardware Profile</td><td>DSR TVOE Guest</td></tr> <tr> <td>Network Element Name</td><td>JETTA *</td></tr> <tr> <td>Location</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Fill in the fields as follows:</p> <p><b>Hostname:</b> &lt;Hostname&gt;</p> <p><b>Role:</b> <b>NETWORK OAM&amp;P</b></p> <p><b>System ID:</b> &lt;Site System ID&gt;</p> <p><b>Hardware Profile:</b> <b>DSR TVOE Guest</b></p> <p><b>Network Element Name:</b> <b>[Choose NE from Drop Down Box]</b></p> <p>The network interface fields will now become available with selection choices based on the chosen hardware profile and network element</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="3">Interfaces:</th></tr> <tr> <th>Network</th><th>IP Address</th><th>Interface</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>INTERNALXMI (10.240.84.128/25)</td><td>10.240.84.155</td><td>xmi <input type="button" value="▼"/> <input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)</td></tr> <tr> <td>INTERNALIMI (10.240.85.0/26)</td><td>10.240.85.10</td><td>imi <input type="button" value="▼"/> <input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>OK</b> <b>Apply</b> <b>Cancel</b></p> <p>Fill in the server IP addresses for the XMI network. Select <b>xmi</b> for the interface. <b>Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.</b></p> <p>Fill in the server IP addresses for the IMI network. Select <b>imi</b> for the interface. <b>Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.</b></p> <p>Next, add the following NTP servers:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>NTP Server</th><th>Preferred?</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>&lt;TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(NO2)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(NO2)&gt;</td><td>Yes</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Select the <b>Ok</b> button when you have completed entering all the server data.</p>	Attribute	Value	Hostname	NO-Server2 *	Role	NETWORK OAM&P *	System ID	NO-Server2	Hardware Profile	DSR TVOE Guest	Network Element Name	JETTA *	Location		Interfaces:			Network	IP Address	Interface	INTERNALXMI (10.240.84.128/25)	10.240.84.155	xmi <input type="button" value="▼"/> <input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)	INTERNALIMI (10.240.85.0/26)	10.240.85.10	imi <input type="button" value="▼"/> <input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)	NTP Server	Preferred?	<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(NO2)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(NO2)>	Yes
Attribute	Value																															
Hostname	NO-Server2 *																															
Role	NETWORK OAM&P *																															
System ID	NO-Server2																															
Hardware Profile	DSR TVOE Guest																															
Network Element Name	JETTA *																															
Location																																
Interfaces:																																
Network	IP Address	Interface																														
INTERNALXMI (10.240.84.128/25)	10.240.84.155	xmi <input type="button" value="▼"/> <input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)																														
INTERNALIMI (10.240.85.0/26)	10.240.85.10	imi <input type="button" value="▼"/> <input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)																														
NTP Server	Preferred?																															
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(NO2)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(NO2)>	Yes																															

## Procedure 11 Configure the Second NOAM Server

4	<b>NOAM GUI:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Export the Initial Configuration	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Servers.</b></p> <p>From the GUI screen, select the NOAM server and then select <b>Export</b> to generate the initial configuration data for that server.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Insert</b> <b>Edit</b> <b>Delete</b> <b>Export</b> <b>Report</b></p>
5	<b>1<sup>st</sup> NOAM Server:</b> Copy Configuration File to 2 <sup>nd</sup> NOAM Server	<p>Obtain a terminal session to the 1<sup>st</sup> NOAM as the <b>admusr</b> user.</p> <p>Use the <b>awpushcfg</b> utility to copy the configuration file created in the previous step from the <code>/var/TKLC/db/filemgmt</code> directory on the 1<sup>st</sup> NOAM to the 2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM server, using the Control network IP address for the 2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM server.</p> <p>The configuration file will have a filename like “<code>TKLCConfigData.&lt;hostname&gt;.sh</code>”.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"><pre>\$ sudo awpushcfg</pre></div> <p>The awpushcfg utility is interactive, so the user will be prompted for the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IP address of the local PMAC server: Use the local control network address from the PMAC.</li> <li>• Username: Use <b>admusr</b></li> <li>• Control network IP address for the target server: In this case, enter the control IP for the 2nd NOAM server).</li> <li>• Hostname of the target server: Enter the server name configured in <b>step 3</b></li> </ul>
6	<b>2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM Server:</b> Verify awpushcfg was called and Reboot the Server	<p>Obtain a terminal window connection on the 2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM iLO from the OA. (Use the procedure in <b>Appendix F: PMAC/NOAM/SOAM Console iLO Access</b>.</p> <p>Login as the <b>admusr</b> user.</p> <p>The automatic configuration daemon will look for the file named <b>“TKLCConfigData.sh”</b> in the <code>/var/tmp</code> directory, implement the configuration in the file, and then prompt the user to reboot the server.</p> <p>Verify awpushcfg was called by checking the following file</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"><pre>\$ sudo cat /var/TKLC/appw/logs/Process/install.log</pre></div> <p>Verify the following message is displayed:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"><pre>[SUCCESS] script completed successfully!</pre></div> <p>Now Reboot the Server:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"><pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre></div> <p>Wait for the server to reboot</p>

## Procedure 11 Configure the Second NOAM Server

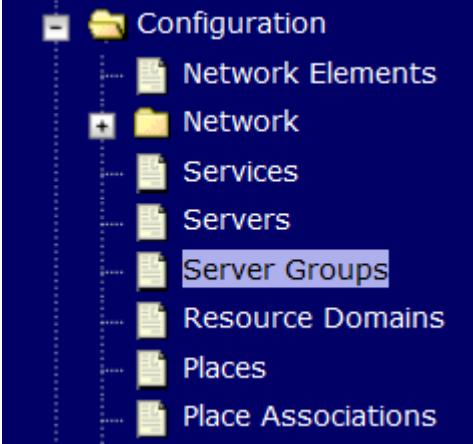
7	<b>2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM Server:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Configure Networking for Dedicated NetBackup Interface (Optional)	<p><b>Note:</b> You will only execute this step if your NOAM is using a dedicated Ethernet interface for NetBackup.</p> <p>Obtain a terminal window to the 2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM server, logging in as the <b>admusr</b> user.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=netbackup --type=Ethernet --onboot=yes --address=&lt;NO2_NetBackup_IP_Adress&gt; --netmask=&lt;NO2_NetBackup_NetMask&gt;</pre> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --route=net --device=netbackup --address=&lt;NO1_NetBackup_Network_ID&gt; --netmask=&lt;NO2_NetBackup_NetMask&gt; --gateway=&lt;NO2_NetBackup_Gateway_IP_Address&gt;</pre>
8	<b>2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM Server: Verify Server Health</b> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Execute the following command on the 2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM server and make sure that no errors are returned:</p>

```
$ sudo syscheck
Running modules in class hardware...OK
Running modules in class disk...OK
Running modules in class net...OK
Running modules in class system...OK
Running modules in class proc...OK
LOG LOCATION: /var/TKLC/log/syscheck/fail_log
```

## Procedure 12 Complete NOAM Server Group Configuration

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to finish configuring the NOAM server group.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM GUI:</b> Login</p> <p>Establish a GUI session on the first NOAM server by using the XMI IP address of the first NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;"><code>http://&lt;NO1_XMI_IP_Address&gt;</code></div> <p>Login as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p> 

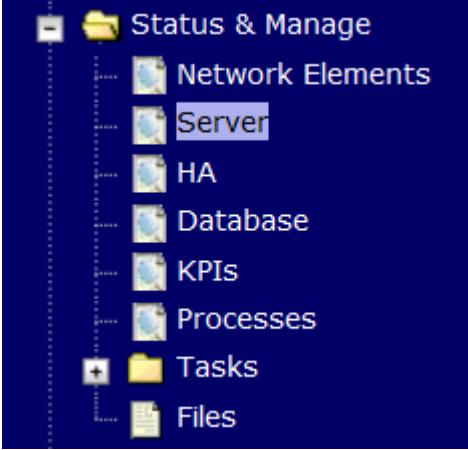
## Procedure 12 Complete NOAM Server Group Configuration

2	<p><b>NOAM GUI:</b> Edit the NOAM Server Group Data</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu-&gt;Configuration-&gt;Server Groups.</b></p>  <p>Select the NOAM Server group and click on <b>Edit</b></p>  <p>Add the 2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM server to the Server Group by clicking the <b>Include in SG</b> checkbox for the 2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM server.</p> <table border="1"><thead><tr><th colspan="3">RMSNO_900060102</th></tr><tr><th>Server</th><th>SG Inclusion</th><th>Preferred HA Role</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>RMSNOA</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr><tr><td>RMSNOB</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr></tbody></table> <p>Click <b>Apply</b>.</p> <p>Add a NOAM VIP by click on <b>Add</b>. Fill in the VIP Address and press <b>Ok</b> as shown below</p> 	RMSNO_900060102			Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	RMSNOA	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare	RMSNOB	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare
RMSNO_900060102														
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role												
RMSNOA	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare												
RMSNOB	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare												

## Procedure 12 Complete NOAM Server Group Configuration

3	<p><b>NOAM VIP:</b> Establish GUI Session</p>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAM by using the XMI VIP address:</p> <p><b><a href="http://&lt;NOAM_VIP_IP_Address">http://&lt;NOAM_VIP_IP_Address</a></b></p> <p>Login as user <b>guiadmin</b>.</p>																																													
4	<p><b>NOAM VIP:</b> Wait for Remote Database Alarm to Clear</p>	<p>Wait for the alarm <b>Remote Database re-initialization in progress</b> to be cleared before proceeding.</p> <p><b>Navigate to Main menu-&gt;Alarms &amp; Events-&gt;View Active</b></p> <p><b>Main Menu: Alarms &amp; Events -&gt; View History (Filtered)</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Seq #</th> <th>Event ID</th> <th>Timestamp</th> <th>Severity</th> <th>Product</th> <th>Process</th> <th>NE</th> <th>Server</th> <th>Type</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>414</td> <td>10200</td> <td>2015-03-20 09:30:00.090 EDT</td> <td>CLEAR</td> <td>apwSoaps</td> <td>...</td> <td>Compass_NO</td> <td>Compass-NOA</td> <td>CFG</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Remote Database re-initialization in progress</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Cleared because DB Re-Init Completed</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>413</td> <td>10200</td> <td>2015-03-20 09:28:16.411 EDT</td> <td>MINOR</td> <td>apwSoaps</td> <td>...</td> <td>Compass_NO</td> <td>Compass-NOA</td> <td>CFG</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Remote Database re-initialization in progress</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Remote Database re-initialization in progress</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Seq #	Event ID	Timestamp	Severity	Product	Process	NE	Server	Type	414	10200	2015-03-20 09:30:00.090 EDT	CLEAR	apwSoaps	...	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG			Remote Database re-initialization in progress			Cleared because DB Re-Init Completed				413	10200	2015-03-20 09:28:16.411 EDT	MINOR	apwSoaps	...	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG			Remote Database re-initialization in progress			Remote Database re-initialization in progress			
Seq #	Event ID	Timestamp	Severity	Product	Process	NE	Server	Type																																							
414	10200	2015-03-20 09:30:00.090 EDT	CLEAR	apwSoaps	...	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG																																							
		Remote Database re-initialization in progress			Cleared because DB Re-Init Completed																																										
413	10200	2015-03-20 09:28:16.411 EDT	MINOR	apwSoaps	...	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG																																							
		Remote Database re-initialization in progress			Remote Database re-initialization in progress																																										

## Procedure 12 Complete NOAM Server Group Configuration

5	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM GUI:</b> Restart 1<sup>st</sup> NOAM Server</p>	<p>From the NOAM GUI, select the <b>Main menu</b> -&gt; <b>Status &amp; Manage</b> -&gt; <b>Server</b> menu.</p>  <p>Select the 2<sup>nd</sup> NOAM server. Select the <b>Restart</b> button.</p> <p><b>Stop</b> <b>Restart</b> <b>Reboot</b> <b>NTP Sync</b> <b>Report</b></p> <p>Answer <b>OK</b> to the confirmation popup.</p> <p>Are you sure you wish to restart application software on the following server(s)? Jetta-NO-2</p> <p><b>OK</b> <b>Cancel</b></p> <p>Wait for restart to complete. Wait approximately 3-5 minutes before proceeding.</p>
---	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## 4.6 Application Configuration: NetBackup Client Installation (Optional)

### Procedure 13 Install NetBackup Client (Optional)

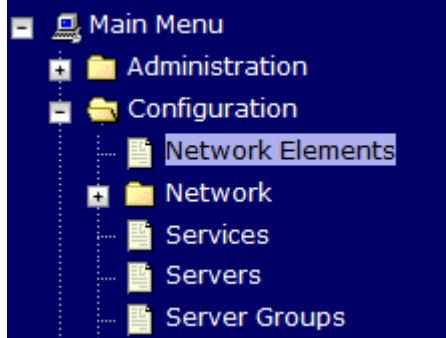
<b>S</b>	This procedure will download and install NetBackup Client software on the server.	
<b>T</b>	Location of the bpstart_notify and bpend_notify scripts is required for the execution of this procedure. For Appworks based applications the scripts are located as follows:	
#		
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- /usr/TKLC/appworks/sbin/bpstart_notify</li><li>- /usr/TKLC/appworks/sbin/bpend_notify</li></ul>
		Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.
		If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Install NetBackup Client Software</b>	If a customer has a way of transferring and installing the net Backup client without the aid of TPD tools (push configuration) then use <b>Appendix J 2</b> Note: This is not common. If the answer to the previous question is not known then use <b>Appendix J 1</b>
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Install NetBackup Client Software</b>	Choose the same method used in step 1 to install NetBackup on the 2 <sup>nd</sup> NOAM.

## 4.7 Application Configuration: Disaster Recovery NOAM (Optional)

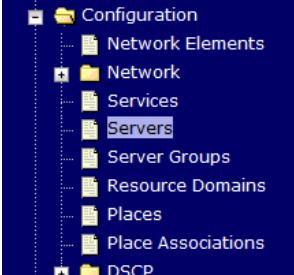
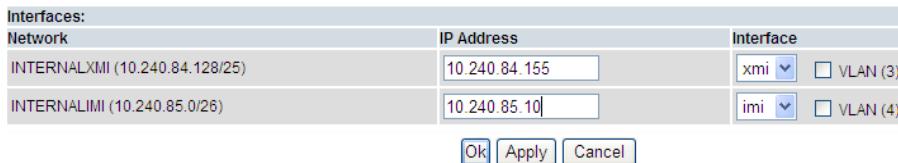
### Procedure 14 NOAM Configuration for DR Site (Optional)

<b>S</b>	This procedure will provide the steps to configure the First DR NOAM server.
<b>T</b>	Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.
<b>E</b>	
<b>P</b>	
<b>#</b>	If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.
1	<p><b>PRIMARY NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p> <p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the XMI VIP IP address. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto; text-align: center;"><b>http://&lt;NOAM_XMI_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</b></div> <p>Login as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p> 

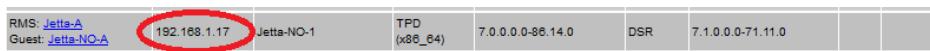
#### Procedure 14 NOAM Configuration for DR Site (Optional)

<p>2 <input type="checkbox"/> PRIMARY NOAM VIP</p> <p>GUI: Insert the DR NOAM Network Element</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu-&gt;Configuration-&gt;Network Elements</b></p>  <p>The <b>Network Elements</b> screen will display select the <b>Browse</b> (scroll to bottom left corner of screen).</p> <p>To create a new Network Element, upload a valid configuration file:</p> <p><input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> <input type="button" value="Upload File"/></p> <p><input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Lock/Unlock"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/> <input type="button" value="Export"/></p> <p>A dialogue will pop up, browse to the location of the DSR DR NOAM Site Element XML File and click the <b>Open</b> button.</p> <p>Then click <b>Upload File</b> as shown below</p> <p>To create a new Network Element, upload a valid configuration file:  <input type="text" value="E:\DR_NO_DEV.ne.xml"/> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> <input type="button" value="Upload File"/></p> <p><input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Lock/Unlock"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/> <input type="button" value="Export"/></p> <p>Once the data has been uploaded, you should see a folder appear with the name of your network element. Click on this folder and you will get a drop-down which describes the individual networks that are now configured:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="6">Network Element</th> </tr> <tr> <th colspan="6">NO_9006005</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Network Name</th> <th>Network Address</th> <th>Netmask</th> <th>VLAN ID</th> <th>Gateway IP Address</th> <th></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>INTERNALXMI</td> <td>10.240.10.32</td> <td>255.255.255.224</td> <td>3</td> <td>10.240.10.35</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>INTERNALIMI</td> <td>10.240.10.0</td> <td>255.255.255.224</td> <td>4</td> <td>10.240.10.3</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Network Element						NO_9006005						Network Name	Network Address	Netmask	VLAN ID	Gateway IP Address		INTERNALXMI	10.240.10.32	255.255.255.224	3	10.240.10.35		INTERNALIMI	10.240.10.0	255.255.255.224	4	10.240.10.3	
Network Element																															
NO_9006005																															
Network Name	Network Address	Netmask	VLAN ID	Gateway IP Address																											
INTERNALXMI	10.240.10.32	255.255.255.224	3	10.240.10.35																											
INTERNALIMI	10.240.10.0	255.255.255.224	4	10.240.10.3																											

#### Procedure 14 NOAM Configuration for DR Site (Optional)

<p>3 <input type="checkbox"/> <b>PRIMARY NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Insert the 1st DR-NOAM server</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Servers.</b></p>  <p>Select the <b>Insert</b> button to insert the new DR-NOAM server into servers table.</p> <p><b>Adding a new server</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Attribute</th> <th>Value</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Hostname</td> <td>DR-NOAM-A *</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Role</td> <td>NETWORK OAM&amp;P *</td> </tr> <tr> <td>System ID</td> <td>DR-NOAM-A</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Hardware Profile</td> <td>DSR TVOE Guest</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Network Element Name</td> <td>- Unassigned - *</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Location</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Fill in the fields as follows:</p> <p><b>Hostname:</b> &lt;Hostname&gt;</p> <p><b>Role:</b> <b>NETWORK OAM&amp;P</b></p> <p><b>System ID:</b> &lt;Site System ID&gt;</p> <p><b>Hardware Profile:</b> <b>DSR TVOE Guest</b></p> <p><b>Network Element Name:</b> <b>[Choose NE from Drop Down Box]</b></p> <p>The network interface fields will now become available with selection choices based on the chosen hardware profile and network element</p>  <p>Fill in the server IP addresses for the XMI network. Select <b>xmi</b> for the interface. <b>Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.</b></p> <p>Fill in the server IP addresses for the IMI network. Select <b>imi</b> for the interface. <b>Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.</b></p> <p>Next, add the following NTP servers:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>NTP Server</th> <th>Preferred?</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>&lt;TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(DR-NO1)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(DR-NO1)&gt;</td> <td>Yes</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Select the <b>Ok</b> button when you have completed entering all the server data.</p>	Attribute	Value	Hostname	DR-NOAM-A *	Role	NETWORK OAM&P *	System ID	DR-NOAM-A	Hardware Profile	DSR TVOE Guest	Network Element Name	- Unassigned - *	Location		NTP Server	Preferred?	<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(DR-NO1)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(DR-NO1)>	Yes
Attribute	Value																		
Hostname	DR-NOAM-A *																		
Role	NETWORK OAM&P *																		
System ID	DR-NOAM-A																		
Hardware Profile	DSR TVOE Guest																		
Network Element Name	- Unassigned - *																		
Location																			
NTP Server	Preferred?																		
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(DR-NO1)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(DR-NO1)>	Yes																		

#### Procedure 14 NOAM Configuration for DR Site (Optional)

4	<b>PRIMARY NOAM VIP</b> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Servers.</b></p>
	<b>GUI:</b> Export the Initial Configuration	<p>From the GUI screen, select the DR-NOAM server and then select <b>Export</b> to generate the initial configuration data for that server.</p>
		<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Insert</b> <b>Edit</b> <b>Delete</b> <b>Export</b> <b>Report</b></p>
5	<b>PMAC:</b> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Use the PMAC GUI to determine the Control Network IP address of the server that is to be the first NOAM server. From the PMAC GUI, navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Software -&gt; Software Inventory.</b></p>
		<p>          Note the IP address for the first DR-NOAM server.</p>
		<p>Login to the PMAC terminal as the <b>admusr</b>.</p>
		<p>From a terminal window connection on the PMAC as the <b>admusr</b> user, exchange SSH keys for <b>admusr</b> between the PMAC and the 1<sup>st</sup> DR-NOAM server using the keyexchange utility, using the Control network IP address for the NOAM server. When prompted for the password, enter the password for the <b>admusr</b> user of the NOAM server.</p>
		<pre>\$ keyexchange admusr@&lt;DR-NO1_Control_IP Address&gt;</pre>
6	<b>NOAM VIP:</b> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>From a terminal window connection on the NOAMP VIP as the <b>admusr</b>.</p>
		<p>Exchange SSH keys for admusr between the NOAM and the DR NO's PMAC using the keyexchange utility.</p>
		<pre>\$ keyexchange admusr@&lt;DR-NO1_Site_PMAC_Mgmt_IP_Address&gt;</pre>
		<p>When prompted for the password, enter the appropriate password for <b>admusr</b> on the PMAC server.</p>

#### Procedure 14 NOAM Configuration for DR Site (Optional)

7	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Primary NOAM:</b> Copy Configuration File to 1 <sup>st</sup> DR-NOAM Server	<p>Obtain a terminal session to the primary NOAM as the <b>admusr</b> user.</p> <p>Use the <b>awpushcfg</b> utility to copy the configuration file created in the previous step from the <code>/var/TKLC/db/filemgmt</code> directory on the primary NOAM to the 1<sup>st</sup> DR-NOAM server, using the Control network IP address for the DR-NOAM server.</p> <p>The configuration file will have a filename like “<code>TKLCConfigData.&lt;Hostname&gt;.sh</code>”.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$ sudo awpushcfg</pre> </div> <p>The awpushcfg utility is interactive, so the user will be prompted for the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IP address of the local PMAC server: Use the local control network address from the PMAC.</li> <li>• Username: Use <b>admusr</b></li> <li>• Control network IP address for the target server: In this case, enter the control IP for the 2nd NOAM server).</li> <li>• Hostname of the target server: Enter the server name configured in <b>step 3</b></li> </ul>
8	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>1<sup>st</sup> DR-NOAM Server:</b> Verify awpushcfg was called and Reboot the Server	<p>Obtain a terminal window connection on the 1<sup>st</sup> DR-NOAM iLO from the OA. (Use the procedure in <b>Appendix F: PMAC/NOAM/SOAM Console iLO Access</b>).</p> <p>Login as the <b>admusr</b> user.</p> <p>The automatic configuration daemon will look for the file named “<b>TKLCConfigData.sh</b>” in the <code>/var/tmp</code> directory, implement the configuration in the file, and then prompt the user to reboot the server.</p> <p>Verify awpushcfg was called by checking the following file</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$ sudo cat /var/TKLC/appw/logs/Process/install.log</pre> </div> <p>Verify the following message is displayed:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>[SUCCESS] script completed successfully!</p> </div> <p>Now Reboot the Server:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre> </div> <p>Wait for the server to reboot</p>

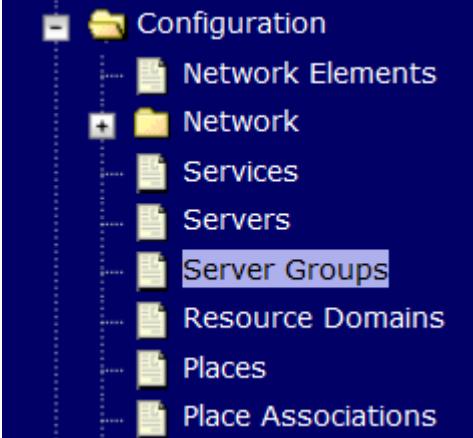
#### Procedure 14 NOAM Configuration for DR Site (Optional)

9	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>1<sup>st</sup> DR-NOAM:</b> Configure Networking for Dedicated NetBackup Interface (Optional)	<p><b>Note:</b> You will only execute this step if your DR-NOAM is using a dedicated Ethernet interface for NetBackup.</p> <p>Obtain a terminal window to the 1<sup>st</sup> DR-NOAM server, logging in as the <b>admusr</b> user.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=netbackup --type=Ethernet --onboot=yes --address=&lt;NO1_NetBackup_IP_Adress&gt; --netmask=&lt;NO1_NetBackup_NetMask&gt;</pre> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --route=net --device=netbackup --address=&lt;NO1_NetBackup_Network_ID&gt; --netmask=&lt;NO1_NetBackup_NetMask&gt; --gateway=&lt;NO1_NetBackup_Gateway_IP_Address&gt;</pre>				
10	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>1<sup>st</sup> DR-NOAM Server:</b> Verify Server Health	<p>Execute the following command on the 1<sup>st</sup> DR-NOAM server and make sure that no errors are returned:</p> <pre>\$ sudo syscheck Running modules in class hardware...OK Running modules in class disk...OK Running modules in class net...OK Running modules in class system...OK Running modules in class proc...OK LOG LOCATION: /var/TKLC/log/syscheck/fail_log</pre>				
11	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Repeat for 2<sup>nd</sup> DR NOAM Server</b>	<p>Repeat <b>Steps 3 through 13</b> to configure 2<sup>nd</sup> DR-NOAM Server. When inserting the 2<sup>nd</sup> DR-NOAM server, change the NTP server address to the following:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>NTP Server</th><th>Preferred?</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>&lt;TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(DR-NO2)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(DR-NO2)&gt;</td><td>Yes</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	NTP Server	Preferred?	<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(DR-NO2)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(DR-NO2)>	Yes
NTP Server	Preferred?					
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(DR-NO2)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(DR-NO2)>	Yes					

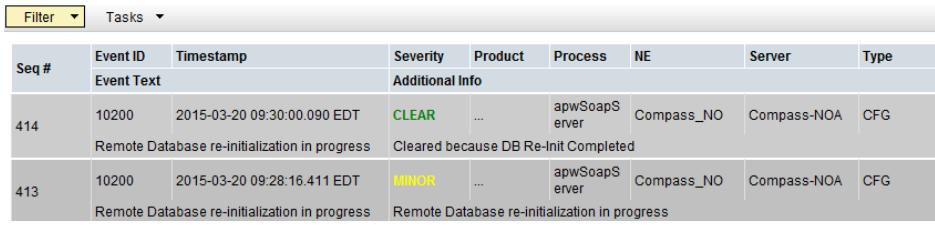
### Procedure 15 Pairing for DR-NOAM site (Optional)

<b>S</b> <b>T</b> <b>E</b> <b>P</b> <b>#</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to pair the DR-NOAM site.</p> <p><b>Prerequisite:</b> Installation for DR-NOAM Site complete</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>Primary NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p> <p>Establish a GUI session on the primary NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the primary NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;"> <b><code>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</code></b> </div> <p>Login as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Oracle System Login</b></p> <p style="text-align: right;">Fri Mar 20 12:29:52 2015 EDT</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px; margin: 10px auto; width: fit-content;"> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Log In</b></p> <p>Enter your username and password to log in</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Username: <input type="text" value="guiadmin"/></p> <p style="text-align: center;">Password: <input type="password" value="*****"/></p> <p style="text-align: center;"><input type="checkbox"/> Change password</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Log In</b></p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;">Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0, 9.0, or 10.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies.</p> <hr/> <p style="text-align: center; font-size: small;">Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</p> </div>

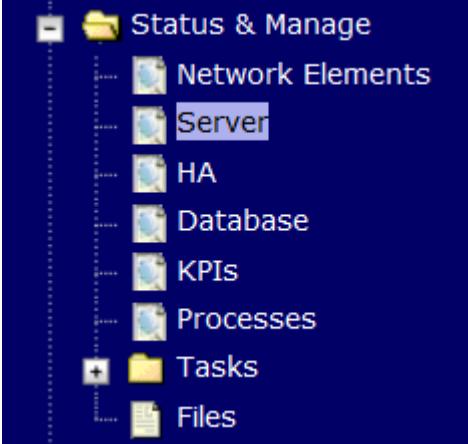
### Procedure 15 Pairing for DR-NOAM site (Optional)

2	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Primary NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Enter DR-NOAM Server Group Data</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Server Groups</b></p>  <p>Select <b>Insert</b> and fill the following fields:</p> <p><b>Insert</b> <b>Edit</b> <b>Delete</b> <b>Report</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Server Group Name:</b> &lt;Enter Server Group Name&gt;</li> <li>• <b>Level:</b> A</li> <li>• <b>Parent :</b> None</li> <li>• <b>Function:</b> DSR (Active/Standby Pair)</li> <li>• <b>WAN Replication Connection Count:</b> Use Default Value</li> </ul> <p>Select <b>OK</b> when all fields are filled in.</p>												
3	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Primary NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Update Server Group</p>	<p>Select the <b>Server Group</b> that was created in the previous step, and click on <b>Edit</b>.</p> <p><b>Insert</b> <b>Edit</b> <b>Delete</b> <b>Report</b></p> <p>The user will be presented with the <b>Server Groups [Edit]</b> screen</p> <p>Check the checkbox labeled <b>Include in SG</b> for <b>both</b> DR-NOAM Servers as shown below and click on <b>Apply</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="3">deaDR_CSLAB_ATT</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Server</th> <th>SG Inclusion</th> <th>Preferred HA Role</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>deaNO-ChaNC-A</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td> </tr> <tr> <td>deaNO-ChaNC-B</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	deaDR_CSLAB_ATT			Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	deaNO-ChaNC-A	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare	deaNO-ChaNC-B	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare
deaDR_CSLAB_ATT														
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role												
deaNO-ChaNC-A	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare												
deaNO-ChaNC-B	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare												

### Procedure 15 Pairing for DR-NOAM site (Optional)

4	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Primary NOAM VIP</b> <b>GUI:</b> Add DR-NOAM VIP	<p>Click the <b>Add</b> dialogue button for the VIP Address and enter an IP Address for the VIP as shown below</p>  <p>Then click the <b>Apply</b> dialogue button. Verify that the banner information message states <b>Data committed</b>.</p> 
5	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Primary NOAM VIP</b> <b>GUI:</b> Wait for Remote Database Alarm to Clear	<p>Wait for the alarm <b>Remote Database re-initialization in progress</b> to be cleared before proceeding.</p> <p><b>Main menu-&gt;Alarms &amp; Events-&gt;View Active</b></p> <p><b>Main Menu: Alarms &amp; Events -&gt; View History (Filtered)</b></p> 

### Procedure 15 Pairing for DR-NOAM site (Optional)

6	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Primary NOAM VIP</b> <b>GUI:</b> Restart 1 <sup>st</sup> DR-NOAM Server	<p>From the NOAM GUI, select the <b>Main menu</b> -&gt; <b>Status &amp; Manage</b> -&gt; <b>Server</b> menu.</p> 
		<p>Select the 1<sup>st</sup> DR-NOAM server. Select the <b>Restart</b> button.</p>
		
		<p>Answer <b>OK</b> to the confirmation popup.</p>
		
		<p>Wait for restart to complete. Wait approximately 3-5 minutes before proceeding.</p>
7	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Primary NOAM VIP</b> <b>GUI :</b> Restart the application on the 2 <sup>nd</sup> DR-NOAM Server	<p>Repeat Steps 6, but this time selecting 2<sup>nd</sup> DR-NOAM Server.</p>
8	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>DR-NOAM: Expected Alarm (DSR 7.1)</b>	<p>For DSR 7.1, the following alarm is expected to be present on the DR-NOAM:</p>
		<p><b>HA Service Start Failure:</b></p>
		
		<p>Note: This alarm is only cosmetic and not service affecting.</p>

## 4.8 Application Configuration: SOAMs

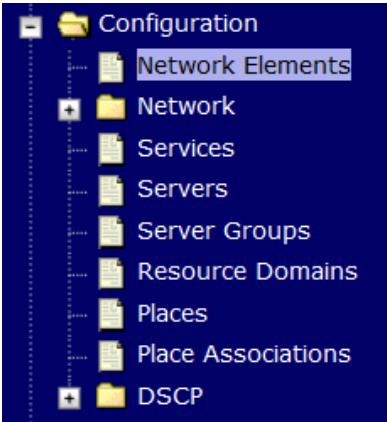
### Procedure 16 Configure SOAM NE

<b>S</b>	This procedure will provide the steps to configure the SOAM Network Element
<b>T</b>	Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.
<b>E</b>	If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.
<b>P</b>	
<b>#</b>	

1	<b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;"><b><a href="http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;">http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</a></b></div> <p>Login as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p> 
---	----------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Procedure 16 Configure SOAM NE

2	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Create the SOAM Network Element using an XML File</p>	<p>Make sure to have an SOAM Network Element XML file available on the PC that is running the web browser. The SOAM Network Element XML file is similar to what was created and used in <b>Procedure 9</b>, but defines the SOAM “Network Element”.</p> <p>Refer to <b>Appendix A: Sample Network Element and Hardware Profiles</b> for a sample Network Element xml file</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu-&gt;Configuration-&gt;Network Elements</b></p>  <p>Select the <b>Browse</b> button, and enter the path and name of the SOAM network XML file.</p> <p>Select the <b>Upload File</b> button to upload the XML file and configure the SOAM Network Element.</p> <p>To create a new Network Element, upload a valid configuration file:</p> <p><input type="button" value="Browse..."/> No file selected. <input type="button" value="Upload File"/></p> <p><input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Export"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/></p>
---	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

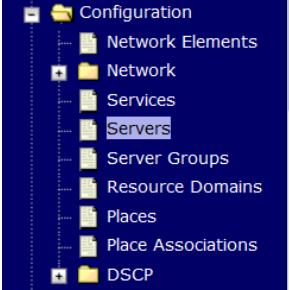
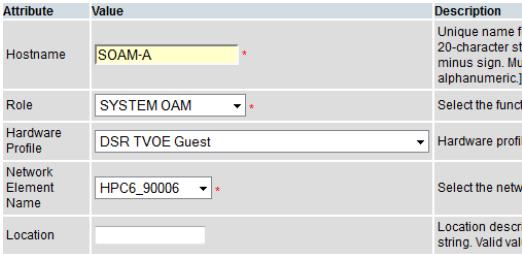
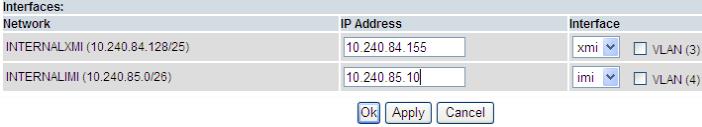
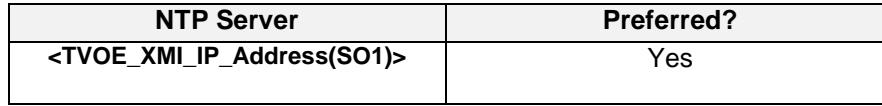
## Procedure 17 Configure the SOAM Servers

<b>S</b> <b>T</b> <b>E</b> <b>P</b> <b>#</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the SOAM servers.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
<b>1</b> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>Exchange SSH keys between SOAM site's local PMAC and the SOAM Server</b></p> <p>Use the PMAC GUI to determine the Control Network IP address of the server that is to be the SOAM server. From the PMAC GUI, navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Software -&gt; Software Inventory</b>.</p>  <p>Note the IP address for the SOAM server.</p> <p>Login to the PMAC terminal as the <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>From a terminal window connection on the PMAC as the <b>admusr</b> user, exchange SSH keys for <b>admusr</b> between the PMAC and the SOAM server using the keyexchange utility, using the Control network IP address for the SOAM server. When prompted for the password, enter the password for the <b>admusr</b> user of the NOAM server.</p> <pre>\$ keyexchange admusr@&lt;SO1_Control_IP_Address&gt;</pre>
<b>2</b> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>Exchange SSH keys between NOAM and PMAC at the SOAM site (If necessary)</b></p> <p><b>Note:</b> If this SOAM shares the same PMAC as the NOAM, then you can skip this step.</p> <p>From a terminal window connection on the NOAM VIP, as the <b>admusr</b>, exchange SSH keys for admusr between the NOAM and the PMAC for this SOAM site using the keyexchange utility.</p> <p>When prompted for the password, enter the admusr password for the PMAC server.</p> <pre>\$ keyexchange admusr@&lt;SO1_Site_PMAC_Mgmt_IP_Address&gt;</pre>

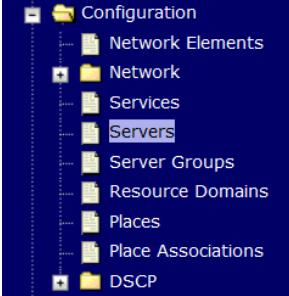
## Procedure 17 Configure the SOAM Servers

3	<b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the XMI IP address of the first NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <p><b><code>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</code></b></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <b><i>guiadmin</i></b> user:</p> 
---	----------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Procedure 17 Configure the SOAM Servers

<p>4 <input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Insert the 1<sup>st</sup> SOAM server</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Servers.</b></p> <p></p> <p>Select the <b>Insert</b> button to insert the 1<sup>st</sup> SOAM server into servers table (the first or server).</p> <p></p> <p>Fill in the fields as follows:</p> <p><b>Hostname:</b> <b>&lt;Hostname&gt;</b></p> <p><b>Role:</b> <b>SYSTEM OAM</b></p> <p><b>System ID:</b> <b>&lt;Site System ID&gt;</b></p> <p><b>Hardware Profile:</b> <b>DSR TVOE Guest</b></p> <p><b>Network Element Name:</b> <b>[Choose NE from Drop Down Box]</b></p> <p>The network interface fields will now become available with selection choices based on the chosen hardware profile and network element</p> <p></p> <p>Fill in the server IP addresses for the XMI network. Select <b>xmi</b> for the interface. <b>Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.</b></p> <p>Fill in the server IP addresses for the IMI network. Select <b>imi</b> for the interface. <b>Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.</b></p> <p>Next, add the following NTP servers:</p> <p></p> <p>Select the <b>Ok</b> button when you have completed entering all the server data.</p>
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Procedure 17 Configure the SOAM Servers

5	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Export the Initial Configuration</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Servers.</b></p>  <p>From the GUI screen, select the NOAM server and then select <b>Export</b> to generate the initial configuration data for that server.</p> <p><b>Insert</b> <b>Edit</b> <b>Delete</b> <b>Export</b> <b>Report</b></p>
6	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP:</b> Copy Configuration File to 1<sup>st</sup> SOAM Server</p>	<p>Obtain a terminal session to the NOAM VIP as the <b>admusr</b> user.</p> <p>Use the <b>awpushcfg</b> utility to copy the configuration file created in the previous step from the <code>/var/TKLC/db/filemgmt</code> directory on the NOAM to the 1<sup>st</sup> SOAM server, using the Control network IP address for the 1<sup>st</sup> SOAM server.</p> <p>The configuration file will have a filename like “TKLCConfigData.&lt;<b>hostname</b>&gt;.sh”.</p> <pre>\$ sudo awpushcfg</pre> <p>The awpushcfg utility is interactive, so the user will be prompted for the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IP address of the local PMAC server: Use the local control network address from the PMAC.</li> <li>• Username: Use <b>admusr</b></li> <li>• Control network IP address for the target server: In this case, enter the control IP for the 1<sup>st</sup> SOAM server).</li> <li>• Hostname of the target server: Enter the server name configured in <b>step 3</b></li> </ul>

## Procedure 17 Configure the SOAM Servers

7	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>1<sup>st</sup> SOAM Server:</b> Verify awpushcfg was called and Reboot the Server</p>	<p>Obtain a terminal window connection on the 1<sup>st</sup> SOAM server console by establishing an ssh session from the NOAM VIP terminal console.</p> <pre>\$ ssh admusr@&lt;SO1_Control_IP&gt;</pre> <p>Login as the <b>admusr</b> user.</p> <p>The automatic configuration daemon will look for the file named <b>“TKLCConfigData.sh”</b> in the /var/tmp directory, implement the configuration in the file, and then prompt the user to reboot the server.</p> <p>Verify awpushcfg was called by checking the following file</p> <pre>\$ sudo cat /var/TKLC/appw/logs/Process/install.log</pre> <p>Verify the following message is displayed:</p> <pre>[SUCCESS] script completed successfully!</pre> <p>Now Reboot the Server:</p> <pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre> <p>Wait for the server to reboot</p>				
8	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>1<sup>st</sup> SOAM Server:</b> Verify Server Health</p>	<p>Execute the following command on the 1<sup>st</sup> SOAM server and make sure that no errors are returned:</p> <pre>\$ sudo syscheck</pre> <p>Running modules in class hardware...OK    Running modules in class disk...OK    Running modules in class net...OK    Running modules in class system...OK    Running modules in class proc...OK    LOG LOCATION: /var/TKLC/log/syscheck/fail_log</p>				
9	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Insert and Configure the 2<sup>nd</sup> SOAM server</b></p>	<p>Repeat this procedure to insert and configure the 2<sup>nd</sup> SOAM server, with the exception of the NTP server, which should be configured as so:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>NTP Server</th><th>Preferred?</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>&lt;TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO2)&gt;</td><td>Yes</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Instead of data for the 1<sup>st</sup> SOAM Server, insert the network data for the 2<sup>nd</sup> SOAM server, transfer the <i>TKLCConfigData</i> file to the 2<sup>nd</sup> SOAM server, and reboot the 2<sup>nd</sup> SOAM server when prompted at a terminal window.</p>	NTP Server	Preferred?	<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO2)>	Yes
NTP Server	Preferred?					
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO2)>	Yes					

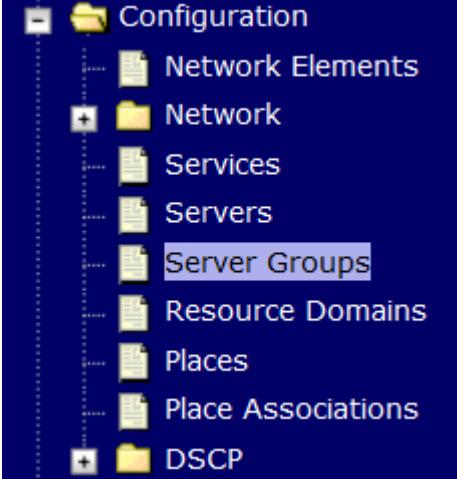
### Procedure 17 Configure the SOAM Servers

10 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Install Netbackup Client Software on SOAMs (Optional)</b>	If you are using NetBackup at this site, then execute <b>Procedure 13</b> again to install the NetBackup Client on all SOAM servers.
--------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

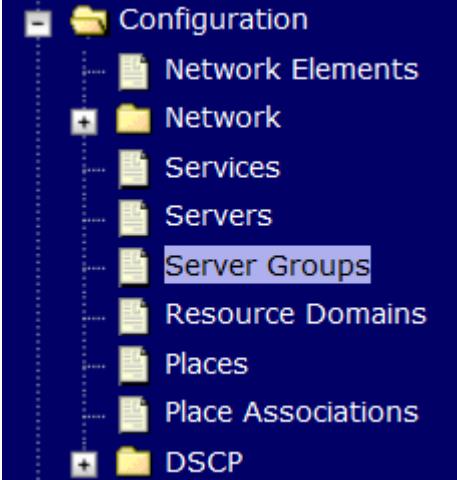
### Procedure 18 Configure the SOAM Server Group

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the SOAM Server Group</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the XMI IP address of the first NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;"><b><a href="http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;">http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</a></b></div> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p> 

#### Procedure 18 Configure the SOAM Server Group

2	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Enter SOAM Server Group Data</p>	<p>After approximately <b>5 minutes</b> for the 2<sup>nd</sup> SOAM server to reboot, Navigate to the GUI <b>Main Menu-&gt;Configuration-&gt;Server Groups</b></p>  <p>Select <b>Insert</b></p>  <p>Add the SOAM Server Group name along with the values for the following fields:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Name:</b> &lt;Hostname&gt;</li><li>• <b>Level:</b> B</li><li>• <b>Parent:</b> [Select the NOAM Server Group]</li><li>• <b>Function:</b> DSR (Active/Standby Pair)</li><li>• <b>WAN Replication Connection Count:</b> Use Default Value</li></ul> <p>Select <b>OK</b> when all fields are filled.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> For DSR mated sites, repeat this step for additional SOAM server groups where the preferred SOAM spares may be entered prior to the active/Standby SOAMs.</p>
---	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

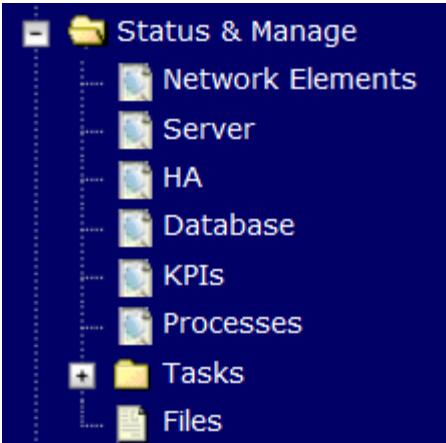
### Procedure 18 Configure the SOAM Server Group

<p>3 <input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Edit the SOAM Server Group and add VIP</p>	<p>From the GUI <b>Main Menu-&gt;Configuration-&gt;Server Groups</b></p>  <p>Select the new SOAM server group, and then select <b>Edit</b>.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Insert</b> <b>Edit</b> <b>Delete</b> <b>Report</b></p> <p>Add both SOAM servers to the Server Group Primary Site by clicking the <b>Include in SG</b> checkbox.</p> <p>Do not check any of the <b>Preferred Spare</b> checkboxes.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="3">SO_900060102</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Server</th><th>SG Inclusion</th><th>Preferred HA Role</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>RMSSOA</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr> <tr> <td>RMSSOB</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Click <b>Apply</b>.</p> <p>Add a SOAM VIP by click on <b>Add</b>. Fill in the <b>VIP Address</b> and press <b>Ok</b> as shown below:</p> 	SO_900060102			Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	RMSSOA	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare	RMSSOB	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare
SO_900060102													
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role											
RMSSOA	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare											
RMSSOB	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare											

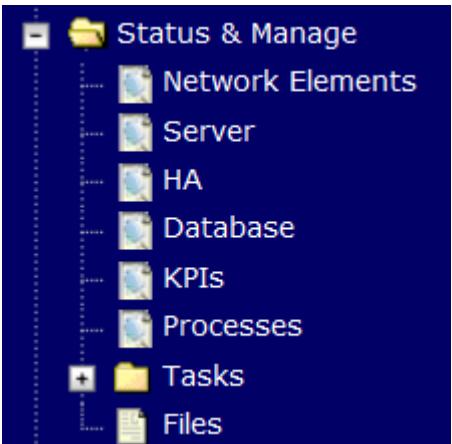
#### Procedure 18 Configure the SOAM Server Group

4	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Prepare Feature Activation where Preferred Spares are Already Present (Optional-DSR 7.0 Only)</b></p>	<p>In mated DSR configurations (DSR 7.0 ONLY), <b>For DSR 7.1, skip this step.</b></p> <p>Where a preferred spare is already present upon entering the Active and Standby SOAM servers. Execute <b>Steps 2-4</b> from <b>Appendix K: Multi-Site Feature Activation (DSR 7.0)</b> Otherwise, skip this step.</p>															
5	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Edit the SOAM Server Group and add Preferred Spares for Site Redundancy (Optional)</p>	<p>If the Two Site Redundancy feature is wanted for the SOAM Server Group, add a SOAM server that is located in its Server Group Secondary Site by clicking the <b>Include in SG</b> checkbox. Also check the <b>Preferred Spare</b> checkbox.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Server</th><th>SG Inclusion</th><th>Preferred HA Role</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>LabF123SOsp1</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>If the Three Site Redundancy feature is wanted for the SOAM Server Group, add an additional SOAM server that is located in its Server Group Tertiary Site by clicking the <b>Include in SG</b> checkbox. Also check the <b>Preferred Spare</b> checkbox.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Preferred Spare</b> servers must be Server Group Secondary &amp; Tertiary Sites. There should be servers from three separate sites (locations).</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Server</th><th>SG Inclusion</th><th>Preferred HA Role</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>LabF123SOsp1</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr> <tr> <td>LabF123SOsp2</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>For more information about Server Group Secondary Site, Tertiary Site or Site Redundancy, see the 1.4 Terminology section.</p>	Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	LabF123SOsp1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare	Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	LabF123SOsp1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare	LabF123SOsp2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role															
LabF123SOsp1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare															
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role															
LabF123SOsp1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare															
LabF123SOsp2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare															
6	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Edit the SOAM Server Group and add additional SOAM VIPs (Optional)</p>	<p>Add additional SOAM VIPs by click on <b>Add</b>. Fill in the “<b>VIP Address</b>” and press <b>Ok</b> as shown below.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Additional SOAM VIPs only apply to SOAM Server Groups with Preferred Spare SOAMs.</p> 															

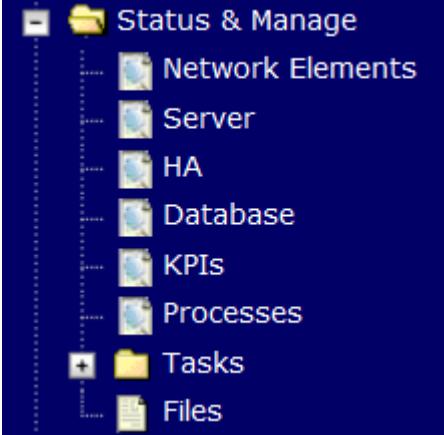
### Procedure 18 Configure the SOAM Server Group

7	<b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Wait for Remote Database Alarm to Clear	<p>Wait for the alarm <b>Remote Database re-initialization in progress</b> to be cleared before proceeding.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main menu-&gt;Alarms &amp; Events-&gt;View Active</b></p> <p><b>Main Menu: Alarms &amp; Events -&gt; View History (Filtered)</b></p> <p><b>Filter</b> Tasks Fri Mar 20</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Seq #</th><th>Event ID</th><th>Timestamp</th><th>Severity</th><th>Product</th><th>Process</th><th>NE</th><th>Server</th><th>Type</th></tr> <tr> <th colspan="9">Event Text Additional Info</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>414</td><td>10200</td><td>2015-03-20 09:30:00.090 EDT</td><td>CLEAR</td><td>...</td><td>apwSoaps erver</td><td>Compass_NO</td><td>Compass-NOA</td><td>CFG</td></tr> <tr> <td></td><td></td><td>Remote Database re-initialization in progress</td><td></td><td></td><td colspan="4">Cleared because DB Re-Init Completed</td></tr> <tr> <td>413</td><td>10200</td><td>2015-03-20 09:28:16.411 EDT</td><td>MINOR</td><td>...</td><td>apwSoaps erver</td><td>Compass_NO</td><td>Compass-NOA</td><td>CFG</td></tr> <tr> <td></td><td></td><td>Remote Database re-initialization in progress</td><td></td><td></td><td colspan="4">Remote Database re-initialization in progress</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Seq #	Event ID	Timestamp	Severity	Product	Process	NE	Server	Type	Event Text Additional Info									414	10200	2015-03-20 09:30:00.090 EDT	CLEAR	...	apwSoaps erver	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG			Remote Database re-initialization in progress			Cleared because DB Re-Init Completed				413	10200	2015-03-20 09:28:16.411 EDT	MINOR	...	apwSoaps erver	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG			Remote Database re-initialization in progress			Remote Database re-initialization in progress			
Seq #	Event ID	Timestamp	Severity	Product	Process	NE	Server	Type																																																
Event Text Additional Info																																																								
414	10200	2015-03-20 09:30:00.090 EDT	CLEAR	...	apwSoaps erver	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG																																																
		Remote Database re-initialization in progress			Cleared because DB Re-Init Completed																																																			
413	10200	2015-03-20 09:28:16.411 EDT	MINOR	...	apwSoaps erver	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG																																																
		Remote Database re-initialization in progress			Remote Database re-initialization in progress																																																			
8	<b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Restart 1 <sup>st</sup> SOAM server	<p>From the NOAMP GUI, select <b>Main menu-&gt;Status &amp; Manage-&gt;Server</b>.</p>  <p>Select the 1<sup>st</sup> SOAM server.</p> <p>Select the <b>Restart</b> button. Answer <b>OK</b> to the confirmation popup. Wait for restart to complete.</p> <p><b>Insert</b> <b>Edit</b> <b>Delete</b> <b>Report</b></p>																																																						

#### Procedure 18 Configure the SOAM Server Group

9	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Restart 2 <sup>nd</sup> SOAM server	<p>From the NOAMP GUI, select <b>Main menu-&gt;Status &amp; Manage-&gt;Server</b>.</p>  <p>Select the 2<sup>nd</sup> SOAM server.</p> <p>Select the <b>Restart</b> button. Answer <b>OK</b> to the confirmation popup. Wait for restart to complete.</p> <p><b>Insert</b> <b>Edit</b> <b>Delete</b> <b>Report</b></p>
---	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

#### Procedure 18 Configure the SOAM Server Group

10	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Restart all Preferred Spare SOAM Servers</p>	<p>If additional Preferred Spare servers are not configured for <i>Secondary or Tertiary Sites</i>, this step can be skipped.</p> <p>If additional Preferred Spare servers are configured for <i>Secondary and/or Tertiary Sites</i>, continuing in the <b>Main menu-&gt;Status &amp; Manage-&gt;Server</b></p>  <p>Select the all <b>Preferred Spare</b> SOAM servers.</p> <p>Select the <b>Restart</b> button. Answer <b>OK</b> to the confirmation popup.</p> <p><b>Insert</b> <b>Edit</b> <b>Delete</b> <b>Report</b></p>
----	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

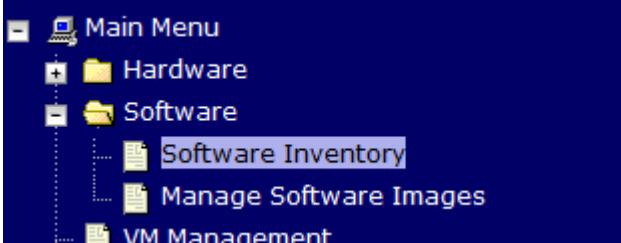
## 4.9 Application Configuration: Activate PCA (PCA Only)

### Procedure 19 Activate PCA (PCA Only)

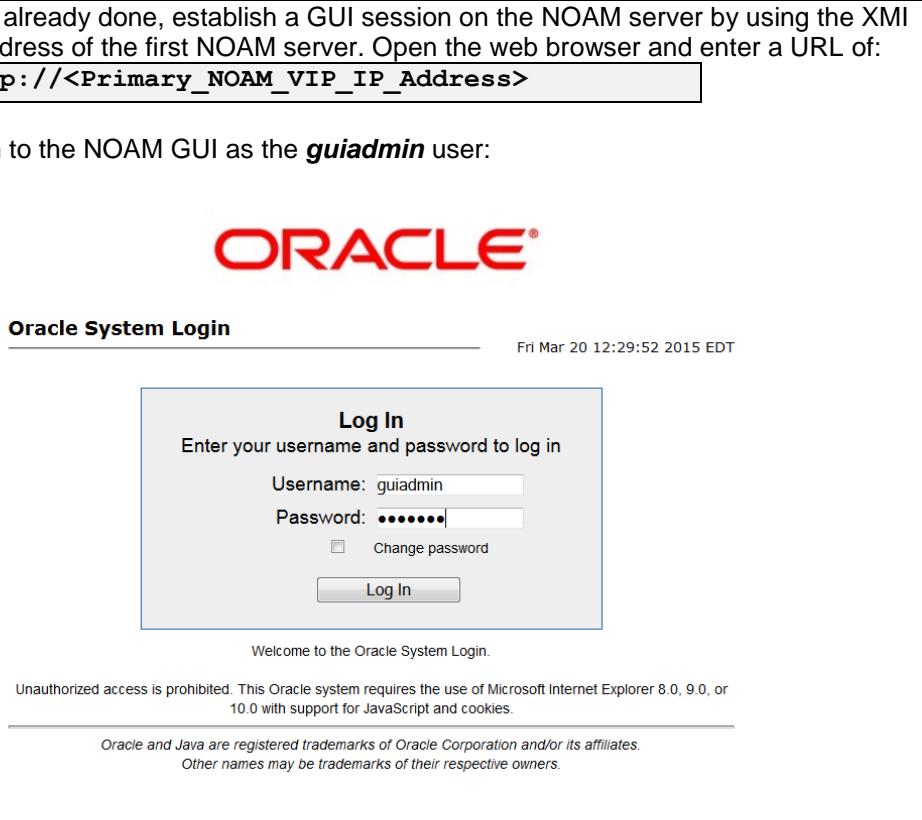
<b>S</b>	This procedure will provide the steps to activate PCA	
<b>T</b>	Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.	
<b>E</b>		
<b>P</b>		
<b>#</b>	If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.	
1	<b>(PCA Only) Activate PCA Feature</b>	If you are installing PCA, execute the applicable procedures (Added SOAM site activation or complete system activation) within <b>Appendix A</b> of [2] (DSR 7.0) and [28] (DSR 7.1) to activate PCA.  <b>Note:</b> If not all SOAM sites are ready at this point, then you should repeat activation for each *new* SOAM site that comes online.

## 4.10 Application Configuration: MPs

### Procedure 20 Configure MP Blade Servers

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure an MP Blade Servers (IPFE, SBR, SS7-MP, DA-MP)</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>PMAC:</b> Exchange SSH keys between MP site's local PMAC and the MP server</p> <p>Use the MP site's PMAC GUI to determine the Control Network IP address of the blade server that is to be an MP server. From the MP site's PMAC GUI, navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Software -&gt; Software Inventory</b>.</p>  <p>Enc:9102 Bay:3F 192.168.1.239 Compass-DAMP-03</p> <p>Note the IP address for an MP server.</p> <p>Login to the MP site's PMAC terminal as the <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>From a terminal window connection on the MP site's PMAC as the <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>Exchange SSH keys for <b>admusr</b> between the PMAC and the MP blade server using the keyexchange utility, using the Control network IP address for the MP blade server.</p> <pre>\$ keyexchange admusr@&lt;MP_Control_Blade_IP_Address&gt;</pre> <p>When prompted for the password, enter the password for the <b>admusr</b> user of the MP server.</p>

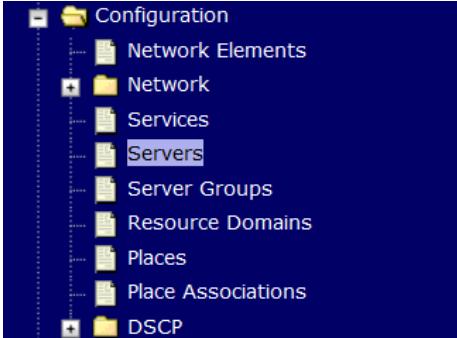
## Procedure 20 Configure MP Blade Servers

2	<b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the XMI IP address of the first NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of: <b><a href="http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;">http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</a></b></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p> 
---	----------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

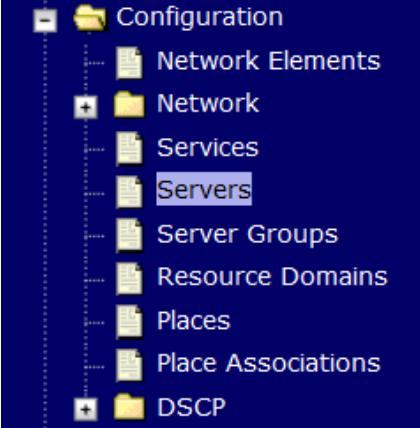
## Procedure 20 Configure MP Blade Servers

3	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Insert the MP server (Part 1)	<p>Before creating the MP blade server, first identify the hardware profile</p> <p><b>Hardware Profile:</b> In the following step, you will select the profile that matches your MP physical hardware and enclosure networking environment.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You must go through the process of identifying the enclosure switches, mezzanine cards and Ethernet interfaces of the network prior and blade(s) used before selecting the profile.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; text-align: center;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="background-color: #f2f2f2;">Profile Name</th><th style="background-color: #f2f2f2;">Blade Size</th><th style="background-color: #f2f2f2;">Multiple Pairs of Enc. Switches?</th><th style="background-color: #f2f2f2;">Bonded Signaling Interfaces?</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>BL460 HP c-Class Blade</td><td>Half</td><td>No</td><td>Yes</td></tr> <tr> <td>BL620 HP c-Class Blade</td><td>Full</td><td>No</td><td>Yes</td></tr> <tr> <td>L2D3 BL460 HP c-Class Blade</td><td>Half</td><td>Yes</td><td>Yes</td></tr> <tr> <td>L2D3 BL620 HP c-Class Blade</td><td>Full</td><td>Yes</td><td>Yes</td></tr> <tr> <td>L2D3 BL620 HP c-Class blade (Unbonded Sig)</td><td>Full</td><td>Yes</td><td>No</td></tr> <tr> <td>DSR TVOE Guest</td><td>N/A (Virtual)</td><td>N/A</td><td>N/A</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Note:</b> If none of the above profiles properly describe your MP server blade, then you will have to create your own in a text editor (<b>See Figure 7 of Appendix A: Sample Network Element and Hardware Profiles</b>) and copy it into the <b>/var/TKLC/appworks/profiles/</b> directory of the active NOAMP server, the standby NOAMP server, and both the DR NOAM servers (<i>if applicable</i>).</p> <p><b>Note:</b> After transferring the above file, set the proper file permission by executing the following command:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$ sudo chmod 777 /var/TKLC/appworks/profiles/&lt;profile name&gt;</pre> </div> <p>Make note of the profile used here, as it will be used in server creation in the following step.</p>	Profile Name	Blade Size	Multiple Pairs of Enc. Switches?	Bonded Signaling Interfaces?	BL460 HP c-Class Blade	Half	No	Yes	BL620 HP c-Class Blade	Full	No	Yes	L2D3 BL460 HP c-Class Blade	Half	Yes	Yes	L2D3 BL620 HP c-Class Blade	Full	Yes	Yes	L2D3 BL620 HP c-Class blade (Unbonded Sig)	Full	Yes	No	DSR TVOE Guest	N/A (Virtual)	N/A	N/A
Profile Name	Blade Size	Multiple Pairs of Enc. Switches?	Bonded Signaling Interfaces?																											
BL460 HP c-Class Blade	Half	No	Yes																											
BL620 HP c-Class Blade	Full	No	Yes																											
L2D3 BL460 HP c-Class Blade	Half	Yes	Yes																											
L2D3 BL620 HP c-Class Blade	Full	Yes	Yes																											
L2D3 BL620 HP c-Class blade (Unbonded Sig)	Full	Yes	No																											
DSR TVOE Guest	N/A (Virtual)	N/A	N/A																											

## Procedure 20 Configure MP Blade Servers

<p>4 <input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Insert the MP server (Part 2)</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu-&gt;Configuration-&gt;Servers</b></p>  <p>Select the <b>Insert</b> button to insert the new MP server into servers table.</p> <p><b>Insert</b> <b>Edit</b> <b>Delete</b> <b>Export</b> <b>Report</b></p> <p>Fill out the following values:</p> <p><b>Hostname:</b> &lt;Hostname&gt;  <b>Role:</b> <b>MP</b>  <b>Network Element:</b> <b>[Choose Network Element]</b></p> <p><b>Hardware Profile:</b> Select the profile that matches your MP physical hardware and enclosure networking environment from <b>step 3</b>.</p> <p><b>Location:</b> &lt;enter an optional location description&gt;</p> <p>The interface configuration form will now appear.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="3">Interfaces:</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Network</th> <th>IP Address</th> <th>Interface</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>INTERNALXMI (10.240.84.128/25)</td> <td>10.240.84.177</td> <td>bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>INTERNALIMI (10.240.85.0/26)</td> <td>10.240.85.16</td> <td>bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>OK</b> <b>Apply</b> <b>Cancel</b></p> <p>For the XMI network, enter the MP's XMI IP address. Select the correct bond or interface. If your XMI network uses VLAN tagging, then select the VLAN checkbox. If your XMI network does <b>NOT</b> use VLAN tagging, then do <b>NOT</b> select the VLAN checkbox.</p> <p>For the IMI network, enter the MP's IMI IP address. Select the proper bond or interface, and <b>select the VLAN checkbox</b>.</p> <p><b>Optional:</b> If dedicated network for SBR replication will be defined, complete <b>procedure 24</b>, then assign the interface for that network here.</p>	Interfaces:			Network	IP Address	Interface	INTERNALXMI (10.240.84.128/25)	10.240.84.177	bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)	INTERNALIMI (10.240.85.0/26)	10.240.85.16	bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)
Interfaces:													
Network	IP Address	Interface											
INTERNALXMI (10.240.84.128/25)	10.240.84.177	bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)											
INTERNALIMI (10.240.85.0/26)	10.240.85.16	bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)											

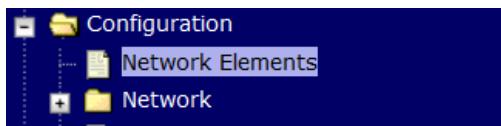
## Procedure 20 Configure MP Blade Servers

5	<b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Insert the MP server (Part 3)	<p>Next, add the following NTP servers:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>NTP Server</th><th>Preferred?</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>&lt;TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO1)&gt;</td><td>Yes</td></tr> <tr> <td>&lt;TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO2)&gt;</td><td>No</td></tr> <tr> <td>&lt;MP_Site_PMAC_TVOE_IP_Address&gt;</td><td>No</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Note:</b> For multiple enclosure deployments, prefer the SOAM TVOE Host that is located in the same enclosure as the MP Server.</p> <p>Select <b>OK</b> when all fields are filled in to finish MP server insertion.</p>	NTP Server	Preferred?	<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO1)>	Yes	<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO2)>	No	<MP_Site_PMAC_TVOE_IP_Address>	No
NTP Server	Preferred?									
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO1)>	Yes									
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO2)>	No									
<MP_Site_PMAC_TVOE_IP_Address>	No									
6	<b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Export the Configuration	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Servers.</b></p>  <p>From the GUI screen, select the MP server and then select <b>Export</b> to generate the initial configuration data for that server.</p> <p><b>Buttons:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Insert</li> <li>Edit</li> <li>Delete</li> <li>Export</li> <li>Report</li> </ul>								

## Procedure 20 Configure MP Blade Servers

7	<b>NOAM VIP:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Copy Configuration File to MP Server	<p>Obtain a terminal session to the NOAM VIP as the <b>admusr</b> user.</p> <p>Use the <b>awpushcfg</b> utility to copy the configuration file created in the previous step from the <code>/var/TKLC/db/filemgmt</code> directory on the NOAM to the MP server, using the Control network IP address for the MP server.</p> <p>The configuration file will have a filename like “TKLCConfigData.&lt;hostname&gt;.sh”.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$ sudo awpushcfg</pre> </div> <p>The awpushcfg utility is interactive, so the user will be prompted for the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IP address of the local PMAC server: Use the local control network address from the PMAC.</li> <li>• Username: Use <b>admusr</b></li> <li>• Control network IP address for the target server: In this case, enter the control IP for the MP server).</li> <li>• Hostname of the target server: Enter the server name configured in <b>step 1</b></li> </ul>
8	<b>MP Server:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Verify awpushcfg was called and Reboot the Configured Server	<p>Obtain a terminal window connection on the MP server console by establishing an ssh session from the NOAM VIP terminal console.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$ ssh admusr@&lt;MP_Control_IP&gt;</pre> </div> <p>Login as the <b>admusr</b> user.</p> <p>Verify awpushcfg was called by checking the following file:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$ sudo cat /var/TKLC/appw/logs/Process/install.log</pre> </div> <p>Verify the following message is displayed:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>[SUCCESS] script completed successfully!</pre> </div> <p>Reboot the sever:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre> </div> <p>Proceed to the next step once the Server finished rebooting, The server is done rebooting once the login prompt is displayed.</p>

## Procedure 20 Configure MP Blade Servers

9	<b>MP Server:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Verify Server Health	<p>After the reboot, login as <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>Execute the following command as super-user on the server and make sure that no errors are returned:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$ sudo syscheck Running modules in class hardware...OK Running modules in class disk...OK Running modules in class net...OK Running modules in class system...OK Running modules in class proc...OK LOG LOCATION: /var/TKLC/log/syscheck/fail.log</pre> </div>
10	<b>MP Server:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Delete Auto-Configured Default Route on MP and Replace it with a Network Route via the XMI Network-Part1 (Optional)	<p><b>Note:</b> THIS STEP IS <b>OPTIONAL</b> AND SHOULD ONLY BE EXECUTED IF YOU PLAN TO CONFIGURE A <b>DEFAULT ROUTE</b> ON YOUR MP THAT USES A SIGNALING (XSI) NETWORK INSTEAD OF THE XMI NETWORK.</p> <p>(Not executing this step will mean that a default route will not be configurable on this MP and you will have to create separate network routes for each signaling network destination.)</p> <p>Using the iLO facility, log into the MP as the <b>admusr</b> user. (<i>Alternatively, you can log into the site's PMAC then SSH to the MP's control address.</i>)</p> <p>Determine &lt;XMI_Gateway_IP&gt; from your SO site network element info.</p> <p>Gather the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• &lt;NO_XMI_Network_Address&gt;</li> <li>• &lt;NO_XMI_Network_Netmask&gt;</li> <li>• &lt;DR_NO_XMI_Network_Address&gt;</li> <li>• &lt;DR_NO_XMI_Network_Netmask&gt;</li> <li>• &lt;TVOE_Mgmt_XMI_Network_Address&gt;</li> <li>• &lt;TVOE_Mgmt_XMI_Network_Netmask&gt;</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> You can either consult the XML files you imported earlier, or go to the NO GUI and view these values from the <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Network Elements</b> screen.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;">  </div> <p>Proceed to the next step to modify the default routes on the MP servers.</p>

## Procedure 20 Configure MP Blade Servers

11	<p><b>MP Server:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Delete Auto-Configured Default Route on MP and Replace it with a Network Route via the XMI Network-Part2 (Optional)</p> <p>After gathering the network information from step 10, proceed with modifying the default routes on the MP server.</p> <p>Establish a connection to the MP server, login as <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>Create network routes to the NO's XMI(OAM) network:</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If your NOAM XMI network is exactly the same as your MP XMI network, then you should skip this command and only configure the DR NO route.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add -route=net --address=&lt;NO_Site_Network_ID&gt; --netmask=&lt;NO_Site_Network_Netmask&gt; --gateway=&lt;MP_XMI_Gateway_IP_Address&gt; --device=&lt;MP_XMI_Interface&gt; Route to &lt;MP_XMI_Interface&gt; added.</pre> <p>Create network routes to the DR NO's XMI(OAM) network:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add -route=net --address=&lt;DR-NO_Site_Network_ID&gt; --netmask=&lt;DR-NO_Site_Network_Netmask&gt; --gateway=&lt;MP_XMI_Gateway_IP_Address&gt; --device=&lt;MP_XMI_Interface&gt; Route to &lt;MP_XMI_Interface&gt; added.</pre> <p>Create network routes to the Management Server TVOE XMI(OAM) network for NTP:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add -route=net --address=&lt;TVOE_Mgmt_XMI_Network_Address&gt; --netmask=&lt;TVOE_Mgmt_XMI_Network_Netmask&gt; --gateway=&lt;MP_XMI_Gateway_IP_Address&gt; --device=&lt;MP_XMI_Interface&gt; Route to &lt;MP_XMI_Interface&gt; added.</pre> <p><b>(Optional)</b> If Sending SNMP traps from individual servers, create host routes to customer SNMP trap destinations on the XMI network:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add -route=host --address=&lt;Customer_NMS_IP&gt; --gateway=&lt;MP_XMI_Gateway_IP_Address&gt; --device=&lt;MP_XMI_Interface&gt; Route to &lt;MP_XMI_Interface&gt; added.</pre> <p>(Repeat for any existing customer NMS stations)</p> <p>Delete the existing default route:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm delete -route=default --gateway=&lt;MP_XMI_Gateway_IP&gt; --device=&lt;MP_XMI_Interface&gt; Route to &lt;MP_XMI_Interface&gt; removed.</pre>
----	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

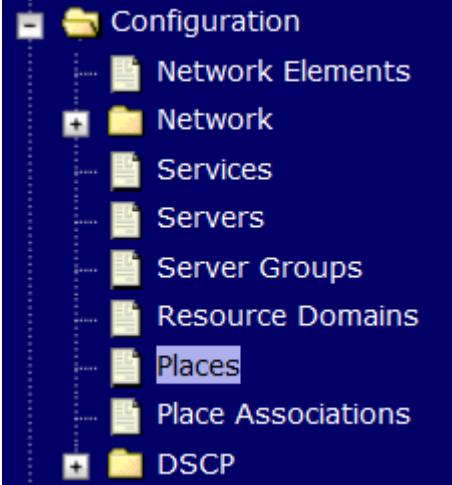
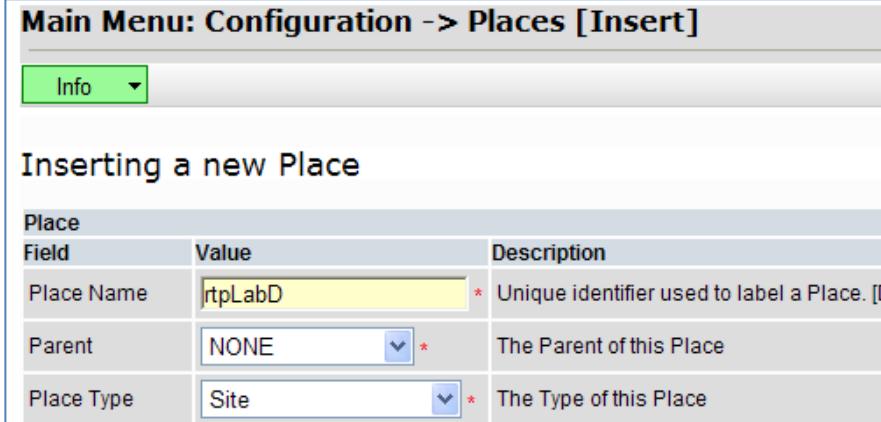
## Procedure 20 Configure MP Blade Servers

12	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>MP Server:</b> Verify connectivity	After steps 10 and 11 have been executed, verify network connectivity.  Establish a connection to the MP server, login as <b>admusr</b> .  Ping active NO XMI IP address to verify connectivity:  <pre>\$ ping &lt;ACTIVE_NO_XMI_IP_Address&gt; PING 10.240.108.6 (10.240.108.6) 56(84) bytes of data. 64 bytes from 10.240.108.6: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=0.342 ms 64 bytes from 10.240.108.6: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.247 ms</pre>  <b>(Optional)</b> Ping Customer NMS Station(s):  <pre>\$ ping &lt;Customer_NMS_IP&gt; PING 172.4.116.8 (172.4.118.8) 56(84) bytes of data. 64 bytes from 172.4.116.8: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=0.342 ms 64 bytes from 172.4.116.8: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.247 ms</pre>  If you do not get a response, then verify your network configuration. If you continue to get failures then halt the installation and contact Oracle customer support.
13	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Repeat for remaining MP at all sites</b>	<b>Repeat</b> this entire procedure for all remaining MP blades.

## Procedure 21 Configure Places and Assign MP Servers to Places (PCA ONLY)

<b>S</b>	This procedure will provide the steps/reference to add “Places” in the POLICY AND CHARGING DRA Network.		
<b>T</b>	Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.		
<b>E</b>			
<b>P</b>			
<b>#</b>			
If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.			
1	<b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the XMI IP address of the first NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of: <b><a href="http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;">http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</a></b></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p> 	

## Procedure 21 Configure Places and Assign MP Servers to Places (PCA ONLY)

2	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Configure Places</p>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAMP by using the XMI VIP address. Login as user <b>guiadmin</b>.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Places</b></p>  <p>Select the <b>Insert</b> button</p>  <p><b>Main Menu: Configuration -&gt; Places [Insert]</b></p> <p><b>Inserting a new Place</b></p> <table border="1"><thead><tr><th colspan="3">Place</th></tr><tr><th>Field</th><th>Value</th><th>Description</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>Place Name</td><td>rtpLabD</td><td>* Unique identifier used to label a Place. [D]</td></tr><tr><td>Parent</td><td>NONE</td><td>* The Parent of this Place</td></tr><tr><td>Place Type</td><td>Site</td><td>* The Type of this Place</td></tr></tbody></table> <p><b>Place Name:</b> &lt;Site Name&gt; <b>Parent:</b> NONE <b>Place Type:</b> Site</p> <p>Repeat this step for each of the <i>PCA Places (Sites)</i> in the network.</p> <p>See the <b>1.4 Terminology</b> section for more information on <i>Sites &amp; Places</i>.</p>	Place			Field	Value	Description	Place Name	rtpLabD	* Unique identifier used to label a Place. [D]	Parent	NONE	* The Parent of this Place	Place Type	Site	* The Type of this Place
Place																	
Field	Value	Description															
Place Name	rtpLabD	* Unique identifier used to label a Place. [D]															
Parent	NONE	* The Parent of this Place															
Place Type	Site	* The Type of this Place															

#### Procedure 21 Configure Places and Assign MP Servers to Places (PCA ONLY)

3	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Assign MP Servers To Places</p>	<p>Select the place configured in step 2, press the edit button.</p> <p><b>Place</b></p> <table border="1"><thead><tr><th>Field</th><th>Value</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>Place Name</td><td><input type="text" value="ltpLabC"/> *</td></tr><tr><td>Parent</td><td><input type="text" value="NONE"/> *</td></tr><tr><td>Place Type</td><td><input type="text" value="Site"/> *</td></tr></tbody></table> <p>For each place you have defined, choose the set of MP servers that will be assigned to those places.</p> <p><b>Servers</b></p> <table border="1"><tbody><tr><td>LABCSONE</td><td><input type="checkbox"/> labCe1b04pdra1</td></tr></tbody></table> <p>Check all the check boxes for <b>PCA DA-MP</b> and <b>SBR</b> servers that will be assigned to this place.</p> <p>Repeat this step for all other DA-MP or SBR servers you wish to assign to places.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> All <b>PCA DA-MPs</b>, <b>SS7MPs</b> and <b>SBR MPs</b> must be added to the <i>Site Place</i> that corresponds to the physical location of the server.</p> <p>See the <b>1.4 Terminology</b> section for more information on <i>Sites</i>.</p>	Field	Value	Place Name	<input type="text" value="ltpLabC"/> *	Parent	<input type="text" value="NONE"/> *	Place Type	<input type="text" value="Site"/> *	LABCSONE	<input type="checkbox"/> labCe1b04pdra1
Field	Value											
Place Name	<input type="text" value="ltpLabC"/> *											
Parent	<input type="text" value="NONE"/> *											
Place Type	<input type="text" value="Site"/> *											
LABCSONE	<input type="checkbox"/> labCe1b04pdra1											

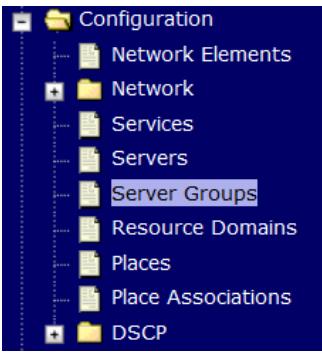
## Procedure 22 Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)

<b>S</b>	This procedure will provide the steps to configure MP Server Groups	
<b>T</b>	Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.	
<b>E</b>		
<b>P</b>		
<b>#</b>	If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of: <b>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</b></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p> 

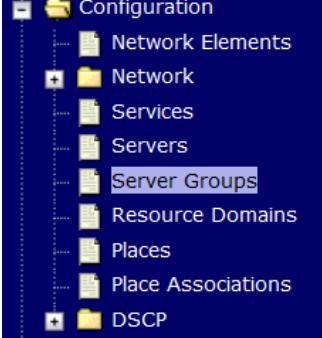
## Procedure 22 Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)

<p>2 <b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Determine Server Group Function</p>	<p>Determine what server group function will be configured, make note the following configuration decisions.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left; padding: 2px;">Server Group Function</th><th style="text-align: left; padding: 2px;">MPs Will Run</th><th style="text-align: left; padding: 2px;">Redundancy Model</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">DSR (multi-active cluster)</td><td style="padding: 2px;">Diameter Relay and Application Services</td><td style="padding: 2px;">Multiple MPs active Per SG</td></tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">DSR (active-standby pair)</td><td style="padding: 2px;">Diameter Relay and Application Services</td><td style="padding: 2px;">1 Active MP and 1 Standby MP / Per SG</td></tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">Session Binding Repository</td><td style="padding: 2px;">Session Binding Repository Function</td><td style="padding: 2px;">1 Active MP and 1 Standby MP / Per SG</td></tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">IP Load Balancer</td><td style="padding: 2px;">IPFE application</td><td style="padding: 2px;">1 Active MP Per SG</td></tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">Policy &amp; Charging SBR</td><td style="padding: 2px;">Policy and Charging Session/or Policy Binding Function</td><td style="padding: 2px;">1 Active MP Per SG</td></tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">SS7-IWF</td><td style="padding: 2px;">MAP IWF Application</td><td style="padding: 2px;">1 Active MP Per SG</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>For the CPA application:</b>  At least one MP Server Group with the “Session Binding Repository” function.</p> <p><b>For PCA application:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <b>Online Charging function (only)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o At least one MP Server Group with the “Policy and Charging SBR” function must be configured</li> <li>o At least one MP Server Group with the “DSR (multi-active cluster)” function must be configured</li> <li>o MP Server Groups with the “IP Load Balancer” function (IPFE) are optional.</li> </ul> </li> <li>- <b>Policy DRA function</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o At least two MP Server Groups with the “Policy and Charging SBR” function must be configured. One will store Session data and one will store Binding data.</li> <li>o At least one MP Server Group with the “DSR (multi-active cluster)” function must be configured</li> <li>o MP Server Groups with the “IP Load Balancer” function (IPFE) are optional.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>WAN Replication Connection Count:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For non-Policy and Charging SBR Server Groups: <b>Default Value</b></li> <li>• For Policy and Charging Server Groups: <b>8</b></li> </ul> <p>For the PCA application, the following types of MP Server Groups must be configured:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <b>DA-MP ( Function: DSR (multi-active cluster))</b></li> <li>- <b>SBR ( Function: Policy and Charging SBR)</b></li> <li>- <b>IPFE ( Function: IP Load Balancer) – Optional)</b></li> </ul>	Server Group Function	MPs Will Run	Redundancy Model	DSR (multi-active cluster)	Diameter Relay and Application Services	Multiple MPs active Per SG	DSR (active-standby pair)	Diameter Relay and Application Services	1 Active MP and 1 Standby MP / Per SG	Session Binding Repository	Session Binding Repository Function	1 Active MP and 1 Standby MP / Per SG	IP Load Balancer	IPFE application	1 Active MP Per SG	Policy & Charging SBR	Policy and Charging Session/or Policy Binding Function	1 Active MP Per SG	SS7-IWF	MAP IWF Application	1 Active MP Per SG
Server Group Function	MPs Will Run	Redundancy Model																				
DSR (multi-active cluster)	Diameter Relay and Application Services	Multiple MPs active Per SG																				
DSR (active-standby pair)	Diameter Relay and Application Services	1 Active MP and 1 Standby MP / Per SG																				
Session Binding Repository	Session Binding Repository Function	1 Active MP and 1 Standby MP / Per SG																				
IP Load Balancer	IPFE application	1 Active MP Per SG																				
Policy & Charging SBR	Policy and Charging Session/or Policy Binding Function	1 Active MP Per SG																				
SS7-IWF	MAP IWF Application	1 Active MP Per SG																				

## Procedure 22 Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)

<p>3</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Enter            MP Server            Group Data</p>	<p>From the data collected from step 2, create the server group with the following:            Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt;Configuration -&gt;Server Groups</b></p>  <p>Select <b>Insert</b></p> <p><b>Insert</b> <b>Edit</b> <b>Delete</b> <b>Report</b></p> <p>Fill out the following fields:</p> <p><b>Server Group Name:</b> &lt;Server Group Name&gt;  <b>Level:</b> C  <b>Parent:</b> [SOAMP Server Group That is Parent To this MP]  <b>Function:</b> Select the Proper Function for this MP Server Group (Gathered in Step 2)</p> <p>Select <b>OK</b> when all fields are filled in.</p>
<p>4</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Repeat            For Additional            Server Groups</p>	<p>Repeat Steps 2-3 for any remaining MP server groups you wish to create.</p> <p>For instance, if you are installing IPFE, you will need to create an IP Load Balancer server group.</p>

## Procedure 22 Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)

5	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP</b> <b>GUI:</b> Edit the MP Server Groups to include MP blades.</p>	<p>From the GUI, navigate to <b>Main Menu-&gt;Configuration-&gt;Server Groups</b></p>  <p>Select a server group that you just created and then select <b>Edit</b>. Select the Network Element that represents the MP server group you wish to edit. Click the <b>Include in SG</b> box for every MP server that you wish to include in <i>this</i> server group. Leave other checkboxes blank.</p> <table border="1"><thead><tr><th colspan="3">HPC6_90006</th></tr><tr><th>Server</th><th>SG Inclusion</th><th>Preferred HA Role</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>MP-1</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr><tr><td>MP-2</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr></tbody></table> <p><b>Note:</b> Each IPFE and SS7MP server should be in its own server group. Select <b>OK</b>.</p>	HPC6_90006			Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	MP-1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare	MP-2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare
HPC6_90006														
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role												
MP-1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare												
MP-2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare												

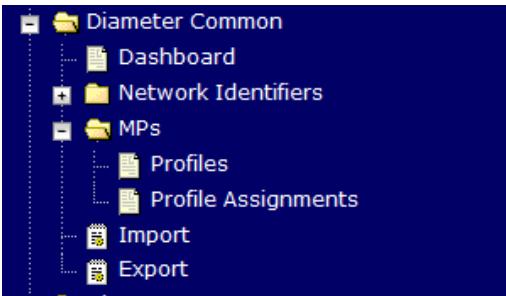
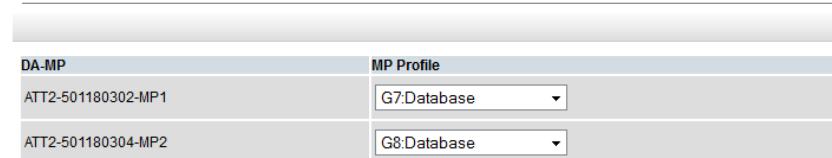
## Procedure 22 Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)

6	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> [PCA ONLY]  Edit the MP Server Group and add Preferred Spares for Site Redundancy (Optional)</p>	<p>If Two Site Redundancy for the Policy and Charging SBR Server Group is wanted, add a MP server that is physically located in a separate site (location) to the Server Group by clicking the <b>Include in SG</b> checkbox and also check the <b>Preferred Spare</b> checkbox.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Server</th><th>SG Inclusion</th><th>Preferred HA Role</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>LabF123SBRsp1</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>If Three Site Redundancy for the SBR MP Server Group is wanted, add two SBR MP servers that are both physically located in separate sites (<i>location</i>) to the Server Group by clicking the <b>Include in SG</b> checkbox and also check the <b>Preferred Spare</b> checkbox for both servers.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Preferred Spare</b> servers should be different sites from the original server and should not be in the same site. There should be servers from three separate sites (locations).</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Server</th><th>SG Inclusion</th><th>Preferred HA Role</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>LabF123SBRsp1</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr> <tr> <td>LabF123SBRsp2</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>For more information about Site Redundancy for Policy and Charging SBR Server Groups, see the <b>1.4 Terminology</b> section.</p> <p>Select <b>OK</b> to save</p>	Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	LabF123SBRsp1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare	Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	LabF123SBRsp1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare	LabF123SBRsp2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare																																																					
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role																																																																				
LabF123SBRsp1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare																																																																				
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role																																																																				
LabF123SBRsp1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare																																																																				
LabF123SBRsp2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare																																																																				
7	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Repeat For Additional Server Groups</p>	<p>Repeat Steps 5- 6 for any remaining MP server groups you need to edit.</p>																																																																				
8	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Wait for Remote Database Alarm to Clear</p>	<p>Wait for the alarm <b>Remote Database re-initialization in progress</b> to be cleared before proceeding.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main menu-&gt;Alarms &amp; Events-&gt;View Active</b></p> <p><b>Main Menu: Alarms &amp; Events -&gt; View History (Filtered)</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Filter</th><th>Tasks</th><th colspan="8">Fri Mar 20</th></tr> <tr> <th>Seq #</th><th>Event ID</th><th>Timestamp</th><th>Severity</th><th>Product</th><th>Process</th><th>NE</th><th>Server</th><th>Type</th></tr> <tr> <th colspan="9">Event Text</th><th colspan="2">Additional Info</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>414</td><td>10200</td><td>2015-03-20 09:30:00.090 EDT</td><td>CLEAR</td><td>...</td><td>apwSoaps erver</td><td>Compass_NO</td><td>Compass-NOA</td><td>CFG</td></tr> <tr> <td></td><td></td><td>Remote Database re-initialization in progress</td><td colspan="7">Cleared because DB Re-Init Completed</td></tr> <tr> <td>413</td><td>10200</td><td>2015-03-20 09:28:16.411 EDT</td><td>MINOR</td><td>...</td><td>apwSoaps erver</td><td>Compass_NO</td><td>Compass-NOA</td><td>CFG</td></tr> <tr> <td></td><td></td><td>Remote Database re-initialization in progress</td><td colspan="7">Remote Database re-initialization in progress</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Filter	Tasks	Fri Mar 20								Seq #	Event ID	Timestamp	Severity	Product	Process	NE	Server	Type	Event Text									Additional Info		414	10200	2015-03-20 09:30:00.090 EDT	CLEAR	...	apwSoaps erver	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG			Remote Database re-initialization in progress	Cleared because DB Re-Init Completed							413	10200	2015-03-20 09:28:16.411 EDT	MINOR	...	apwSoaps erver	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG			Remote Database re-initialization in progress	Remote Database re-initialization in progress						
Filter	Tasks	Fri Mar 20																																																																				
Seq #	Event ID	Timestamp	Severity	Product	Process	NE	Server	Type																																																														
Event Text									Additional Info																																																													
414	10200	2015-03-20 09:30:00.090 EDT	CLEAR	...	apwSoaps erver	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG																																																														
		Remote Database re-initialization in progress	Cleared because DB Re-Init Completed																																																																			
413	10200	2015-03-20 09:28:16.411 EDT	MINOR	...	apwSoaps erver	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG																																																														
		Remote Database re-initialization in progress	Remote Database re-initialization in progress																																																																			

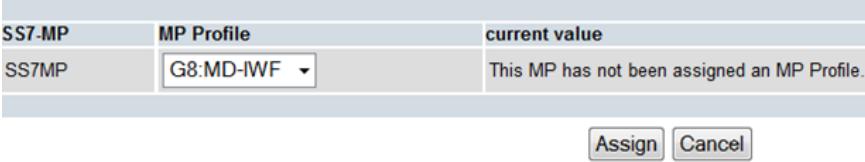
## Procedure 22 Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)

9	<b>SOAM VIP GUI: Login</b>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the SOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the SOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of: <b>http://&lt;Primary_SOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</b></p> <p>Login to the SOAM GUI as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p> 
---	----------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Procedure 22 Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)

10	<b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Assign Profiles to DA-MPs from SOAM GUI.	Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Diameter Common -&gt;MPs -&gt; Profiles Assignments</b>																				
		 <p>Refer to the <b>DA-MP</b> section. (If the site has both DSR and MAP-IWF server groups, you will see both a DA-MP section and an SS7-MP section)</p> <p><b>Main Menu: Diameter Common -&gt; MPs -&gt; Profile Assignments</b></p>  <p>For each MP, select the proper profile assignment based on the MP's hardware type and the function it will serve:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Profile Name</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><b>G6:Relay</b></td> <td>G6 DA-MP half height blade running relay application</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>G6:Database</b></td> <td>G6 DA-MP half height blade running a database application (e.g. - FABR, RBAR)</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>G6:Session</b></td> <td>G6 DA-MP half height blade running a session application (e.g. - CPA, PCA)</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>G8:Relay</b></td> <td>G8/G9 DA-MP half height blade running the relay application</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>G8:Database</b></td> <td>G8/G9 DA-MP half height blade running a database application (e.g. FABR, RBAR)</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>G8:Session</b></td> <td>G8/G9 DA-MP half height blade running a session application (e.g. CPA, PCA)</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>G7:Relay</b></td> <td>G7 DA-MP Full height blade running the relay application</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>G7:Database</b></td> <td>G7 DA-MP Full height blade running a database application (e.g. FABR, RBAR)</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>G7:Session</b></td> <td>G7 DA-MP Full height blade running a session application (e.g. CPA, PCA)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Note:</b> If the DA-MPs at this site are configured for <i>Active/Standby</i> then there will be a single selection box visible that assigns profiles for all MPs.</p> <p>When finished, press the <b>Assign</b> button</p>	Profile Name	Description	<b>G6:Relay</b>	G6 DA-MP half height blade running relay application	<b>G6:Database</b>	G6 DA-MP half height blade running a database application (e.g. - FABR, RBAR)	<b>G6:Session</b>	G6 DA-MP half height blade running a session application (e.g. - CPA, PCA)	<b>G8:Relay</b>	G8/G9 DA-MP half height blade running the relay application	<b>G8:Database</b>	G8/G9 DA-MP half height blade running a database application (e.g. FABR, RBAR)	<b>G8:Session</b>	G8/G9 DA-MP half height blade running a session application (e.g. CPA, PCA)	<b>G7:Relay</b>	G7 DA-MP Full height blade running the relay application	<b>G7:Database</b>	G7 DA-MP Full height blade running a database application (e.g. FABR, RBAR)	<b>G7:Session</b>	G7 DA-MP Full height blade running a session application (e.g. CPA, PCA)
Profile Name	Description																					
<b>G6:Relay</b>	G6 DA-MP half height blade running relay application																					
<b>G6:Database</b>	G6 DA-MP half height blade running a database application (e.g. - FABR, RBAR)																					
<b>G6:Session</b>	G6 DA-MP half height blade running a session application (e.g. - CPA, PCA)																					
<b>G8:Relay</b>	G8/G9 DA-MP half height blade running the relay application																					
<b>G8:Database</b>	G8/G9 DA-MP half height blade running a database application (e.g. FABR, RBAR)																					
<b>G8:Session</b>	G8/G9 DA-MP half height blade running a session application (e.g. CPA, PCA)																					
<b>G7:Relay</b>	G7 DA-MP Full height blade running the relay application																					
<b>G7:Database</b>	G7 DA-MP Full height blade running a database application (e.g. FABR, RBAR)																					
<b>G7:Session</b>	G7 DA-MP Full height blade running a session application (e.g. CPA, PCA)																					

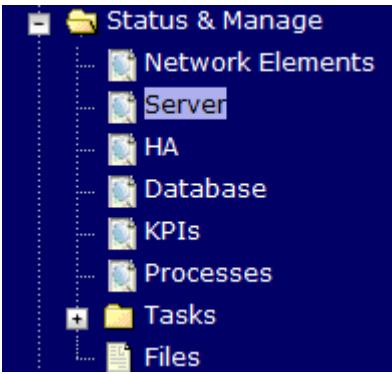
## Procedure 22 Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)

11	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Assign Profiles to SS7-MPs.</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu-&gt;Diameter-&gt;Configuration-&gt;MPs-&gt;Profiles Assignments</b></p>  <p>Refer to the <b>SS7-MP</b> section. (If the site has both DSR and MAP-IWF server groups, you will see both a DA-MP section and an SS7-MP section)</p>  <p>For each SS7 MP, select the proper profile assignment based on the SS7 MP's hardware type and the function it will serve:</p> <table border="1"><thead><tr><th>Profile Name</th><th>Description</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>G8:MD-IWF</td><td>HP BL460 Gen8/9 Running MAP-IWF fucntions</td></tr></tbody></table> <p>When finished, press the <b>Assign</b> button</p>	Profile Name	Description	G8:MD-IWF	HP BL460 Gen8/9 Running MAP-IWF fucntions
Profile Name	Description					
G8:MD-IWF	HP BL460 Gen8/9 Running MAP-IWF fucntions					

## Procedure 22 Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)

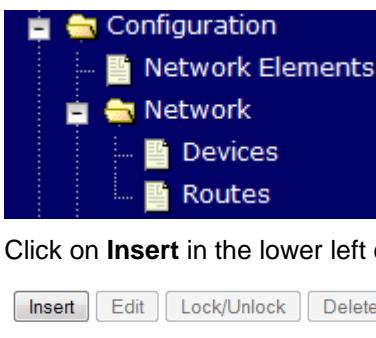
12	<b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of: <b>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</b></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p> 
----	----------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Procedure 22 Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)

13	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Restart MP blade servers</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main menu-&gt;Status &amp; Manage-&gt;Server</b></p>  <p>For each MP server:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Select the MP server.</li><li>• Select the <b>Restart</b> button.</li><li>• Answer <b>OK</b> to the confirmation popup. Wait for the message which tells you that the restart was successful.</li></ul> <p><b>Note:</b> POLICY AND CHARGING DRA INSTALLATIONS: You may continue to see alarms related to ComAgent until you complete PCA installation by finishing <b>Procedure 39</b>.</p>
----	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## 4.11 Application Configuration: Signaling Network

### Procedure 23 Configure the Signaling Networks

<b>S</b> <b>T</b> <b>E</b> <b>P</b> <b>#</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the signaling networks</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
<b>1</b> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p> <p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:  <b>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</b></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p> 
<b>2</b> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI: Navigate to Signaling Network Configuration Screen</b></p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Network</b></p>  <p>Click on <b>Insert</b> in the lower left corner.</p>

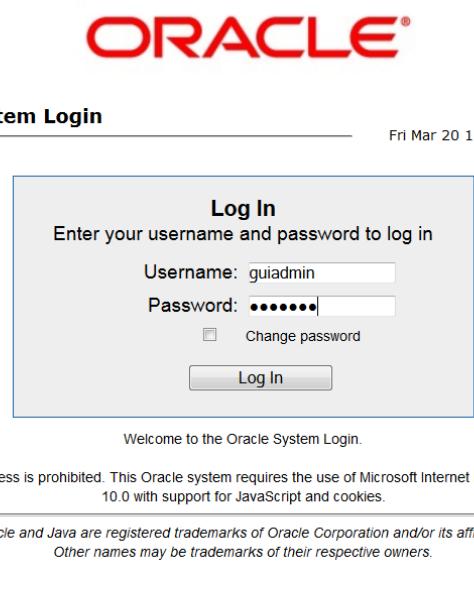
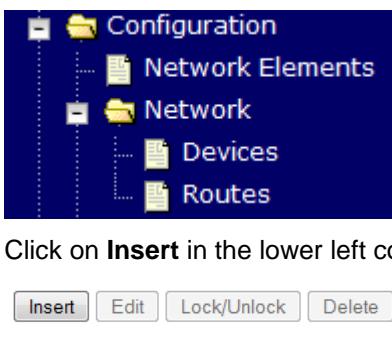
### Procedure 23 Configure the Signaling Networks

<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">3</span> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAMP VIP:</b> Add Signaling Networks	<p>You will see the following screen:</p> <p><b>Insert Network</b></p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left; padding: 2px;">Field</th><th style="text-align: left; padding: 2px;">Value</th><th style="text-align: left; padding: 2px;">Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">Network Name</td><td style="padding: 2px; background-color: #ffffcc;">XSI1</td><td style="padding: 2px;">The name of this network. [Default = N/A. Range = Alpha-numeric]</td></tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">Network Element</td><td style="padding: 2px; background-color: #ffffcc;">- Unassigned -</td><td style="padding: 2px;">The network element this network is a part of. If not specified, the network is a primary network.</td></tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">VLAN ID</td><td style="padding: 2px; background-color: #ffffcc;">5</td><td style="padding: 2px;">The VLAN ID to use for this network. [Default = N/A. Range = 1-4095]</td></tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">Network Address</td><td style="padding: 2px; background-color: #ffffcc;">10.71.88.0</td><td style="padding: 2px;">The network address of this network. [Default = N/A. Range = 1-255.255.255.255]</td></tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">Netmask</td><td style="padding: 2px; background-color: #ffffcc;">255.255.255.0</td><td style="padding: 2px;">Subnetting to apply to servers within this network. [Default = N/A. Range = 1-255.255.255.255]</td></tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">Router IP</td><td style="padding: 2px; background-color: #ffffcc;">10.71.88.3</td><td style="padding: 2px;">The IP address of a router on this network. If this is a default route on servers with interfaces on this network. If custom monitored.</td></tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">Default Network</td><td style="padding: 2px; text-align: center;"> <input type="radio"/> Yes  <input checked="" type="radio"/> No         </td><td style="padding: 2px;">A selection indicating whether this is the network with a default route.</td></tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">Routable</td><td style="padding: 2px; text-align: center;"> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes  <input type="radio"/> No         </td><td style="padding: 2px;">Whether or not this network is routable outside its network. If Yes, it will be possibly present in all network elements.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p style="text-align: right; margin-top: -10px;"> <input type="button" value="Ok"/> <input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> </p> <p>Enter the <b>Network Name</b>, <b>VLAN ID</b>, <b>Network Address</b>, <b>Netmask</b>, and <b>Router IP</b> that matches the Signaling network</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Even if the network does not use VLAN Tagging, you should enter the correct VLAN ID here as indicated by the NAPD</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>IMPORTANT:</b> Leave the Network Element field as <b>Unassigned</b>.</li> <li>• Select <b>No</b> for Default Network</li> <li>• Select <b>Yes</b> for Routable.</li> </ul> <p>Press <b>OK</b>. if you are finished adding signaling networks</p> <p><b>-OR-</b></p> <p>Press <b>Apply</b> to save this signaling network and repeat this step to enter additional signaling networks.</p>	Field	Value	Description	Network Name	XSI1	The name of this network. [Default = N/A. Range = Alpha-numeric]	Network Element	- Unassigned -	The network element this network is a part of. If not specified, the network is a primary network.	VLAN ID	5	The VLAN ID to use for this network. [Default = N/A. Range = 1-4095]	Network Address	10.71.88.0	The network address of this network. [Default = N/A. Range = 1-255.255.255.255]	Netmask	255.255.255.0	Subnetting to apply to servers within this network. [Default = N/A. Range = 1-255.255.255.255]	Router IP	10.71.88.3	The IP address of a router on this network. If this is a default route on servers with interfaces on this network. If custom monitored.	Default Network	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	A selection indicating whether this is the network with a default route.	Routable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	Whether or not this network is routable outside its network. If Yes, it will be possibly present in all network elements.
Field	Value	Description																										
Network Name	XSI1	The name of this network. [Default = N/A. Range = Alpha-numeric]																										
Network Element	- Unassigned -	The network element this network is a part of. If not specified, the network is a primary network.																										
VLAN ID	5	The VLAN ID to use for this network. [Default = N/A. Range = 1-4095]																										
Network Address	10.71.88.0	The network address of this network. [Default = N/A. Range = 1-255.255.255.255]																										
Netmask	255.255.255.0	Subnetting to apply to servers within this network. [Default = N/A. Range = 1-255.255.255.255]																										
Router IP	10.71.88.3	The IP address of a router on this network. If this is a default route on servers with interfaces on this network. If custom monitored.																										
Default Network	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	A selection indicating whether this is the network with a default route.																										
Routable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	Whether or not this network is routable outside its network. If Yes, it will be possibly present in all network elements.																										

### Procedure 24 Additional Servers to Network Mapping (PCA Only)

<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">S</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">T</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">E</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">P</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">#</span>	<p>This procedure details other operations that should happen once the NOAM/SOAM sites have been configured and after PCA is activated.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

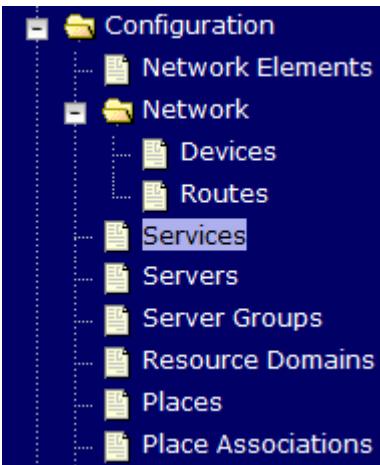
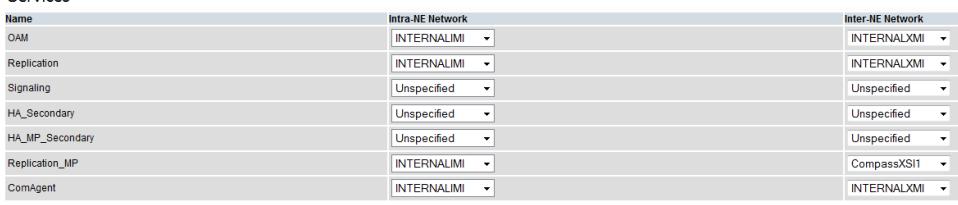
## Procedure 24 Additional Servers to Network Mapping (PCA Only)

1	<b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Login	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:  <b>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</b></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p>  <p>Welcome to the Oracle System Login.    Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0, 9.0, or 10.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies.</p> <p><small>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates.    Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</small></p>
2	<b>NOAM VIP GUI: [PCA Only]:</b> Navigate to Signaling Network Configuration Screen	<p><b>Note:</b> Execute this step only if you are defining a separate, dedicated network for SBR Replication.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Network</b></p>  <p>Click on <b>Insert</b> in the lower left corner.</p> <p><b>Insert</b> <b>Edit</b> <b>Lock/Unlock</b> <b>Delete</b> <b>Report</b></p>

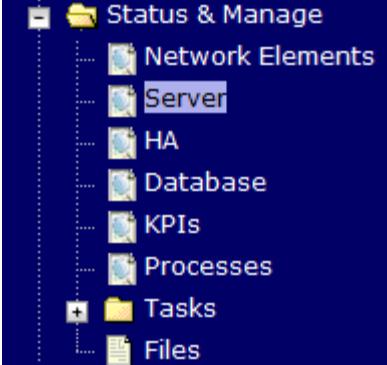
## Procedure 24 Additional Servers to Network Mapping (PCA Only)

<p>3 <input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP GUI: [PCA Only]:</b> Define SBR DB Replication Network</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> Execute this step only if you are defining a separate, dedicated network for SBR Replication.</p> <p><b>Main Menu: Configuration -&gt; Network [Insert]</b></p> <p><b>Insert Network</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field</th><th>Value</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Network Name</td><td>Replicaiton</td><td>* The name of this network. [Default = N/A. Range = Alphanumeric]</td></tr> <tr> <td>Network Element</td><td>- Unassigned -</td><td>The network element this network is a part of. If not specified, the network is a top-level network.</td></tr> <tr> <td>VLAN ID</td><td>8</td><td>* The VLAN ID to use for this network. [Default = N/A. Range = 1-4095]</td></tr> <tr> <td>Network Address</td><td>10.71.88.0</td><td>* The network address of this network. [Default = N/A. Range = Valid IP format.]</td></tr> <tr> <td>Netmask</td><td>255.255.255.0</td><td>* Subnetting to apply to servers within this network. [Default = N/A. Range = Valid decimal (IPv4) format.]</td></tr> <tr> <td>Router IP</td><td>10.71.88.3</td><td>The IP address of a router on this network. If this is a default network, it is the IP address of the router with interfaces on this network. If customer router monitoring is enabled, this is the IP address of the customer router.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Default Network</td><td><input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No</td><td>A selection indicating whether this is the network with a default gateway.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Routable</td><td><input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</td><td>Whether or not this network is routable outside its network element. This is determined by the presence of a default gateway in all network elements.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p style="text-align: right;"><b>Ok</b> <b>Apply</b> <b>Cancel</b></p> <p>Enter the <b>Network Name</b>, <b>VLAN ID</b>, <b>Network Address</b>, <b>Netmask</b>, and <b>Router IP</b> that matches the SBR DB Replication network</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Even if the network does not use VLAN Tagging, you should enter the correct VLAN ID here as indicated by the NAPD</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>IMPORTANT:</b> Leave the Network Element field as <b>Unassigned</b>.</li> <li>• Select <b>No</b> for Default Network</li> <li>• Select <b>Yes</b> for Routable.</li> </ul> <p>Press <b>Ok</b>, if you are finished adding signaling networks <b>-OR-</b> Press <b>Apply</b> to save this signaling network and repeat this step to enter additional signaling networks.</p>	Field	Value	Description	Network Name	Replicaiton	* The name of this network. [Default = N/A. Range = Alphanumeric]	Network Element	- Unassigned -	The network element this network is a part of. If not specified, the network is a top-level network.	VLAN ID	8	* The VLAN ID to use for this network. [Default = N/A. Range = 1-4095]	Network Address	10.71.88.0	* The network address of this network. [Default = N/A. Range = Valid IP format.]	Netmask	255.255.255.0	* Subnetting to apply to servers within this network. [Default = N/A. Range = Valid decimal (IPv4) format.]	Router IP	10.71.88.3	The IP address of a router on this network. If this is a default network, it is the IP address of the router with interfaces on this network. If customer router monitoring is enabled, this is the IP address of the customer router.	Default Network	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	A selection indicating whether this is the network with a default gateway.	Routable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	Whether or not this network is routable outside its network element. This is determined by the presence of a default gateway in all network elements.
Field	Value	Description																										
Network Name	Replicaiton	* The name of this network. [Default = N/A. Range = Alphanumeric]																										
Network Element	- Unassigned -	The network element this network is a part of. If not specified, the network is a top-level network.																										
VLAN ID	8	* The VLAN ID to use for this network. [Default = N/A. Range = 1-4095]																										
Network Address	10.71.88.0	* The network address of this network. [Default = N/A. Range = Valid IP format.]																										
Netmask	255.255.255.0	* Subnetting to apply to servers within this network. [Default = N/A. Range = Valid decimal (IPv4) format.]																										
Router IP	10.71.88.3	The IP address of a router on this network. If this is a default network, it is the IP address of the router with interfaces on this network. If customer router monitoring is enabled, this is the IP address of the customer router.																										
Default Network	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	A selection indicating whether this is the network with a default gateway.																										
Routable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	Whether or not this network is routable outside its network element. This is determined by the presence of a default gateway in all network elements.																										

## Procedure 24 Additional Servers to Network Mapping (PCA Only)

<p>4 <input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP GUI: [PCA Only]:</b> Perform Additional Service to Networks Mapping</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> Execute this step only if you are defining a separate, dedicated network for SBR Replication.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Services</b></p>  <p>Select the <b>Edit</b> button</p> <p><b>Edit</b> <b>Report</b></p> <p>Set the Services as shown in the table below:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th><th>Intra-NE Network</th><th>Inter-NE Network</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Replication_MP</td><td>&lt;IMI Network&gt;</td><td>&lt;SBR DB Replication Network&gt;*</td></tr> <tr> <td>ComAgent</td><td>&lt;IMI Network&gt;</td><td>&lt;SBR DB Replication Network&gt;*</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Note:</b> It is recommended that dual-path HA heartbeats be enabled in support of geo-diverse SBRs. This requires participating servers to be attached to at least two routable networks.</p> <p>Note: For <b>HA_MP_Secondary</b> it is recommended the <b>Inter-NE Network</b> be set as the XSI network (configured in <b>Step 2</b>) and <b>Intra-NE Network</b> be set as the InternalIMI network.</p>  <p>Select the <b>Ok</b> button to apply the Service-to-Network selections.</p>	Name	Intra-NE Network	Inter-NE Network	Replication_MP	<IMI Network>	<SBR DB Replication Network>*	ComAgent	<IMI Network>	<SBR DB Replication Network>*
Name	Intra-NE Network	Inter-NE Network								
Replication_MP	<IMI Network>	<SBR DB Replication Network>*								
ComAgent	<IMI Network>	<SBR DB Replication Network>*								

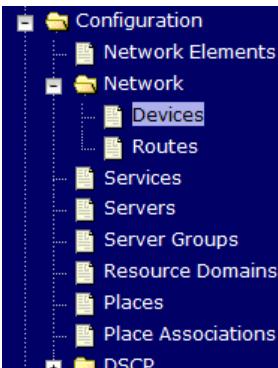
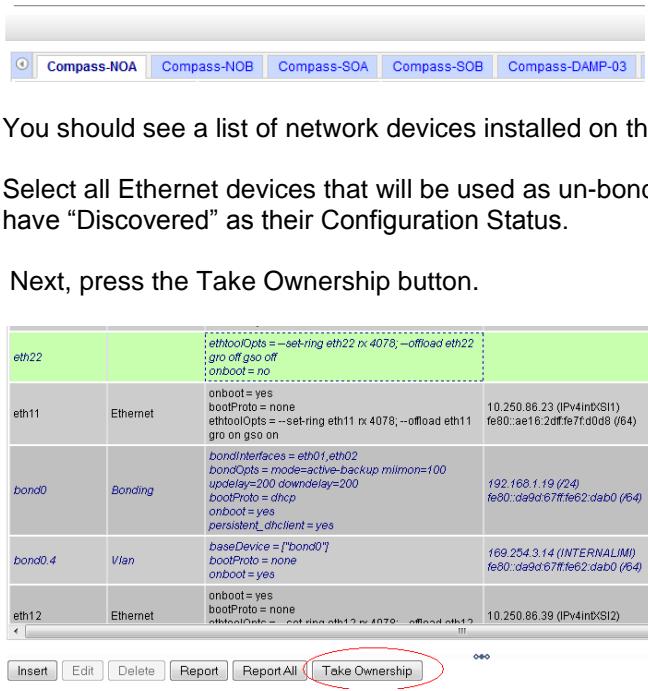
#### Procedure 24 Additional Servers to Network Mapping (PCA Only)

5	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP GUI:[PCA Only]</b> Restart SBR Servers	<p><b>Warning: DO NOT perform this step on previously installed SBR servers</b></p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main menu-&gt;Status &amp; Manage-&gt;Server</b></p>  <p>For each SBR server:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Select the SBR server.</li><li>• Select the <b>Restart</b> button.</li><li>• Answer <b>OK</b> to the confirmation popup. Wait for the message which tells you that the restart was successful.</li></ul> <p><b>Note:</b> POLICY AND CHARGING DRA INSTALLATIONS: You may continue to see alarms related to ComAgent until you complete PCA installation by finishing <b>Procedure</b>.</p>
---	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

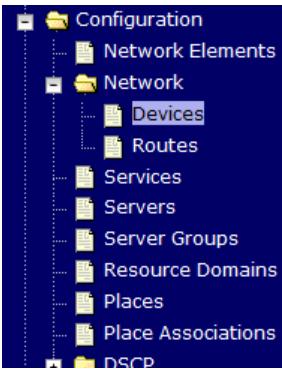
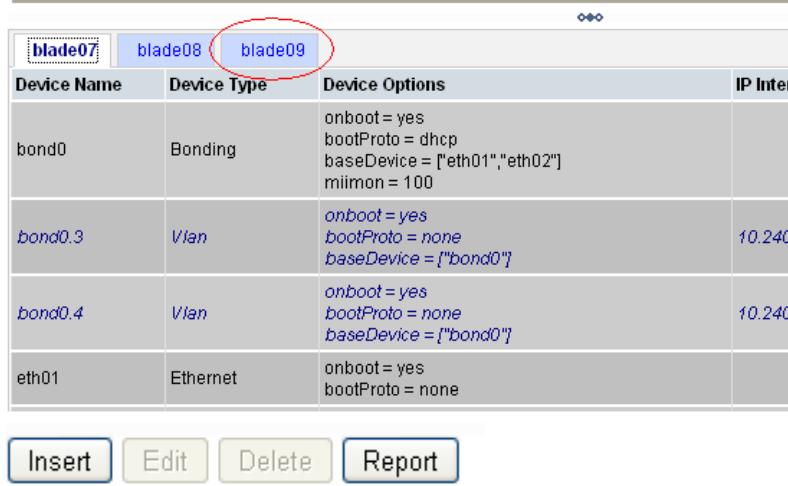
## Procedure 25 Configure the Signaling Devices

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the signaling devices</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The site specific HW configuration will affect which steps need to be executed:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 30%;">Questions:</th><th style="width: 40%;">How many pairs of switches are in the enclosure?</th><th style="width: 30%;">Will the MP use a bonded interface?</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="3" style="vertical-align: top; text-align: center; padding: 5px;">Possible Execution Scenarios:</td><td style="text-align: center; padding: 5px;">Single</td><td style="text-align: center; padding: 5px;">N/A</td></tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 5px;">Multiple</td><td style="text-align: center; padding: 5px;">Yes</td></tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center; padding: 5px;">Multiple</td><td style="text-align: center; padding: 5px;">No</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>			Questions:	How many pairs of switches are in the enclosure?	Will the MP use a bonded interface?	Possible Execution Scenarios:	Single	N/A	Multiple	Yes	Multiple	No
Questions:	How many pairs of switches are in the enclosure?	Will the MP use a bonded interface?											
Possible Execution Scenarios:	Single	N/A											
	Multiple	Yes											
	Multiple	No											
<b>1</b> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p> <p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:  <b>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</b></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p>  <p>Fri Mar 20 12:29:52 2015 EDT</p> <p>Log In</p> <p>Enter your username and password to log in</p> <p>Username: guiadmin</p> <p>Password: <b>*****</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Change password</p> <p>Log In</p> <p>Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</p> <p>Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0, 9.0, or 10.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies.</p> <p>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</p>												

## Procedure 25 Configure the Signaling Devices

<p>2 <input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Make Signaling Devices Configurable (Un-bonded, non-VLAN signaling interfaces only)</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> You will only execute this step if you are using un-bonded, non-VLAN tagged Ethernet interfaces for signaling traffic.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Network -&gt; Devices</b></p>  <p>You should see several tabs each representing a blade in the system. Click on the tab representing the first MP Blade.</p> <p><b>Main Menu: Configuration -&gt; Network -&gt; Devices</b></p>  <p>You should see a list of network devices installed on the MP.</p> <p>Select all Ethernet devices that will be used as un-bonded signaling interfaces and have "Discovered" as their Configuration Status.</p> <p>Next, press the Take Ownership button.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Device</th><th>Type</th><th>Configuration</th><th>Status</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>eth22</td><td></td><td>ethtoolOpts = --set-ring eth22 rx 4078;--offload eth22;gro off gso off;onboot = no</td><td>Discovered</td></tr> <tr> <td>eth11</td><td>Ethernet</td><td>onboot = yes bootProto = none ethtoolOpts = --set-ring eth11 rx 4078;--offload eth11 gro on gso on</td><td>10.250.86.23 (IPv4intXSI1) fe80:ae16:2aff:fe7fd0d8 (/64) Deployed</td></tr> <tr> <td>bond0</td><td>Bonding</td><td>bondInterfaces = eth01,eth02 bondOpts = mode=active-backup miimon=100 updelay=200 downdelay=200 bootProto = dhcp onboot = yes persistent_dhclient = yes</td><td>192.168.1.19 (724) fe80:da9d:67ff:fe62:dab0 (/64) Discovered</td></tr> <tr> <td>bond0.4</td><td>Vlan</td><td>baseDevice = "bond0" bootProto = none onboot = yes</td><td>169.254.3.14 (INTERNALIM) fe80:da9d:67ff:fe62:dab0 (/64) Deployed</td></tr> <tr> <td>eth12</td><td>Ethernet</td><td>onboot = yes bootProto = none ethtoolOpts = --set-ring eth12 rx 4078;--offload eth12</td><td>10.250.86.39 (IPv4intXSI2) Deployed</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>After a brief moment, the selected devices should now show a Configuration Status of "Configured".</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Device</th><th>Configuration</th><th>Status</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>eth22</td><td>ethtoolOpts = --set-ring eth22 rx 4078;--offload eth22;gro off gso off;onboot = no</td><td>Configured</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Device	Type	Configuration	Status	eth22		ethtoolOpts = --set-ring eth22 rx 4078;--offload eth22;gro off gso off;onboot = no	Discovered	eth11	Ethernet	onboot = yes bootProto = none ethtoolOpts = --set-ring eth11 rx 4078;--offload eth11 gro on gso on	10.250.86.23 (IPv4intXSI1) fe80:ae16:2aff:fe7fd0d8 (/64) Deployed	bond0	Bonding	bondInterfaces = eth01,eth02 bondOpts = mode=active-backup miimon=100 updelay=200 downdelay=200 bootProto = dhcp onboot = yes persistent_dhclient = yes	192.168.1.19 (724) fe80:da9d:67ff:fe62:dab0 (/64) Discovered	bond0.4	Vlan	baseDevice = "bond0" bootProto = none onboot = yes	169.254.3.14 (INTERNALIM) fe80:da9d:67ff:fe62:dab0 (/64) Deployed	eth12	Ethernet	onboot = yes bootProto = none ethtoolOpts = --set-ring eth12 rx 4078;--offload eth12	10.250.86.39 (IPv4intXSI2) Deployed	Device	Configuration	Status	eth22	ethtoolOpts = --set-ring eth22 rx 4078;--offload eth22;gro off gso off;onboot = no	Configured
Device	Type	Configuration	Status																												
eth22		ethtoolOpts = --set-ring eth22 rx 4078;--offload eth22;gro off gso off;onboot = no	Discovered																												
eth11	Ethernet	onboot = yes bootProto = none ethtoolOpts = --set-ring eth11 rx 4078;--offload eth11 gro on gso on	10.250.86.23 (IPv4intXSI1) fe80:ae16:2aff:fe7fd0d8 (/64) Deployed																												
bond0	Bonding	bondInterfaces = eth01,eth02 bondOpts = mode=active-backup miimon=100 updelay=200 downdelay=200 bootProto = dhcp onboot = yes persistent_dhclient = yes	192.168.1.19 (724) fe80:da9d:67ff:fe62:dab0 (/64) Discovered																												
bond0.4	Vlan	baseDevice = "bond0" bootProto = none onboot = yes	169.254.3.14 (INTERNALIM) fe80:da9d:67ff:fe62:dab0 (/64) Deployed																												
eth12	Ethernet	onboot = yes bootProto = none ethtoolOpts = --set-ring eth12 rx 4078;--offload eth12	10.250.86.39 (IPv4intXSI2) Deployed																												
Device	Configuration	Status																													
eth22	ethtoolOpts = --set-ring eth22 rx 4078;--offload eth22;gro off gso off;onboot = no	Configured																													

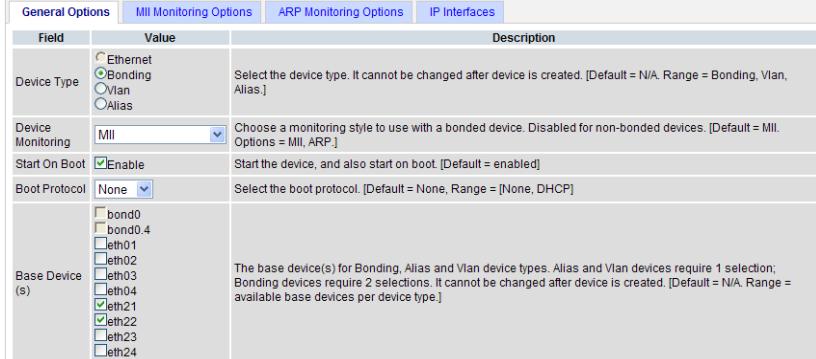
## Procedure 25 Configure the Signaling Devices

3	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Configure the Signaling Interfaces of the first MP</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Network -&gt; Devices</b></p>  <p>You should see several tabs each representing a blade in the system. Click on the tab representing the first MP Blade.</p> <p><b>Main Menu: Configuration -&gt; Network -&gt; Devices</b></p>  <p>Refer to the following table to determine which steps to execute next based on the number of enclosure switch pairs and whether Bonded Interfaces are used</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Number of Enclosure Switch Pairs</th><th>Bonded Interface</th><th>Steps to Execute</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td><td>N/A</td><td>3 and 4</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 or 3</td><td>Yes</td><td>5 and 6</td></tr> <tr> <td>2 or 3</td><td>No</td><td>7 and 8</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Number of Enclosure Switch Pairs	Bonded Interface	Steps to Execute	1	N/A	3 and 4	2 or 3	Yes	5 and 6	2 or 3	No	7 and 8
Number of Enclosure Switch Pairs	Bonded Interface	Steps to Execute												
1	N/A	3 and 4												
2 or 3	Yes	5 and 6												
2 or 3	No	7 and 8												

## Procedure 25 Configure the Signaling Devices

4	<b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Configure the Signaling Interfaces of the MP (1 pair of enclosure switches)	Click on <b>Insert</b> . 																							
		<p>The following screen should be displayed. Verify that the blade name on the top corresponds to the MP.</p> <p><b>Insert Device on blade09</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field</th> <th>Value</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Device Type</td> <td> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Ethernet  <input type="radio"/> Bond  <input checked="" type="radio"/> VLAN  <input type="radio"/> Alias         </td> <td>Select the device type. [Default = N/A]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Device Monitoring</td> <td>-- Monitoring Type--</td> <td>Choose a monitoring style to use with a bonded device. Disabled for non-bonded devices. [Default = MII]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Start On Boot</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable</td> <td>Start the device, and also start on boot. [Default = enabled]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Boot Protocol</td> <td>None</td> <td>Select the boot protocol. [Default = None, Range = {None, DHCP}]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Base Device (s)</td> <td> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> bond0  <input type="checkbox"/> bond0.4  <input type="checkbox"/> eth01  <input type="checkbox"/> eth02         </td> <td>Select the base device(s); VLAN and Alias device require a single base device and bond devices require two base devices. [Default = None]</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Device Type: VLAN</b>  <b>Start on Boot: verify checkbox is selected.</b>  <b>Boot Protocol: verify that it is set to None</b>  <b>Base Device: bond0</b></p> <p>Click on the <b>IP Interfaces</b> tab as shown below.</p> <p><b>Insert Device on blade09</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>IP Address List:</th> <th>Add Row</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td>XSI1</td> <td>Remove</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Now Click on <b>Add Row</b>, the following will be displayed</p> <p>Select the first Signaling Network from the drop down menu.    If configuring an <b>IPv4</b>, then enter the <b>IPv4</b> address.    If configuring an <b>IPv6</b> address and <b>IPv6 auto-configuration</b> is enabled on your signaling network, and the MPs are in active/standby configuration, then there's no need to enter an IP address, it will be assigned automatically.    If configuring an <b>IPv6</b> address and <b>IPv6 auto-configuration is disabled</b>, or the MPs are in multi-active mode:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If an IPv4 already exists, click on <b>Add Row</b> and enter the IPv6 address.</li> <li>• If an IPv4 doesn't exist, simply enter the IPv6 address.</li> </ul> <p>Click on <b>OK</b> at the bottom of the screen.</p> <p><b>Ok</b> <b>Apply</b> <b>Cancel</b></p> <p>To add additional Signaling Interfaces, click on Insert again and repeat this step, otherwise continue with the next step.</p> <p>Skip the next 2 steps and continue to <b>step 6</b></p>	Field	Value	Description	Device Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Ethernet <input type="radio"/> Bond <input checked="" type="radio"/> VLAN <input type="radio"/> Alias	Select the device type. [Default = N/A]	Device Monitoring	-- Monitoring Type--	Choose a monitoring style to use with a bonded device. Disabled for non-bonded devices. [Default = MII]	Start On Boot	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	Start the device, and also start on boot. [Default = enabled]	Boot Protocol	None	Select the boot protocol. [Default = None, Range = {None, DHCP}]	Base Device (s)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> bond0 <input type="checkbox"/> bond0.4 <input type="checkbox"/> eth01 <input type="checkbox"/> eth02	Select the base device(s); VLAN and Alias device require a single base device and bond devices require two base devices. [Default = None]	IP Address List:	Add Row	<input type="text"/>	XSI1	Remove
Field	Value	Description																							
Device Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Ethernet <input type="radio"/> Bond <input checked="" type="radio"/> VLAN <input type="radio"/> Alias	Select the device type. [Default = N/A]																							
Device Monitoring	-- Monitoring Type--	Choose a monitoring style to use with a bonded device. Disabled for non-bonded devices. [Default = MII]																							
Start On Boot	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	Start the device, and also start on boot. [Default = enabled]																							
Boot Protocol	None	Select the boot protocol. [Default = None, Range = {None, DHCP}]																							
Base Device (s)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> bond0 <input type="checkbox"/> bond0.4 <input type="checkbox"/> eth01 <input type="checkbox"/> eth02	Select the base device(s); VLAN and Alias device require a single base device and bond devices require two base devices. [Default = None]																							
IP Address List:	Add Row																								
<input type="text"/>	XSI1	Remove																							

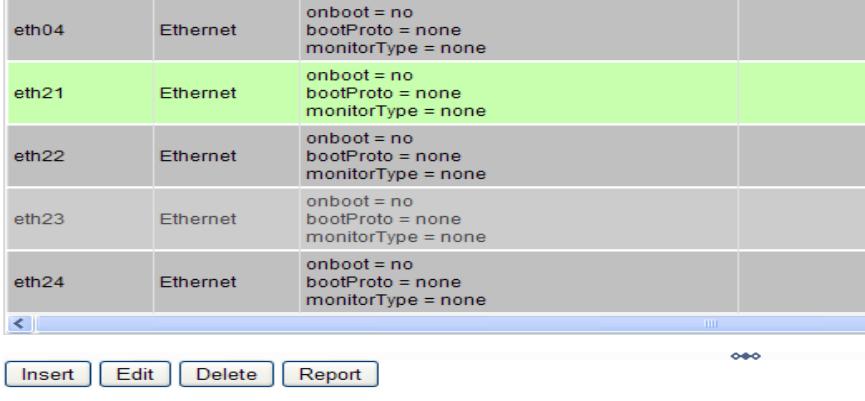
## Procedure 25 Configure the Signaling Devices

5	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Configure the Signaling Interfaces of the MP-Part 1 (multiple pairs of enclosure switches with bonded interfaces)</p>	<p>Click on <b>Insert</b>.</p> <p><b>Insert</b> <b>Edit</b> <b>Delete</b> <b>Report</b> <b>Report All</b> <b>Take Ownership</b></p> <p>The following screen should be displayed. Verify that the blade name on the top corresponds to the MP.</p>  <p><b>Device Type: Bonding</b></p> <p><b>Device Monitoring: MII</b></p> <p><b>Start on Boot: Verify that the checkbox is selected.</b></p> <p><b>Boot Protocol: Verify that it is set to None</b></p> <p><b>Base Device: Select the ports that correspond to the signaling enclosure switches. (e.g. if the signaling switches are in Slots 3 and 4, you would select eth11 and eth12)</b></p> <p>Click on <b>OK</b> at the bottom of the screen.</p> <p><b>Ok</b> <b>Apply</b> <b>Cancel</b></p> <p><b>Note:</b> ARP Device Monitoring while using IPv6 ONLY is not supported</p>
---	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

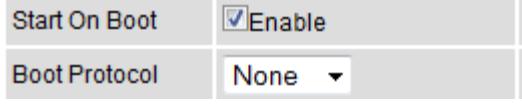
## Procedure 25 Configure the Signaling Devices

6	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Configure the Signaling Interfaces of the MP-Part 2 (multiple pairs of enclosure switches with bonded interfaces)</p>	<p>Continued from the previous step</p> <p>Next click <b>Insert</b> again. The same screen as above will appear, select the following:</p> <p><b>Device Type:</b> <b>VLAN</b></p> <p><b>Start on Boot:</b> <b>verify that the checkbox is selected.</b></p> <p><b>Boot Protocol:</b> <b>verify that it is set to None</b></p> <p><b>Base Device:</b> <b>bond1.</b></p> <p>Now Click on the <b>IP Interfaces</b> tab as shown below.</p> <p><b>Insert Device on blade09</b></p> <p></p> <p>Now Click on <b>Add Row</b>, the following will be displayed</p> <p></p> <p>Select the first <b>Signaling Network</b> from the drop down menu.</p> <p>Enter the IP address that corresponds to the IPv4 or IPv6 interface.</p> <p>Click on <b>OK</b> at the bottom of the screen.</p> <p></p> <p>To add additional <b>Signaling Interfaces</b>, Select <b>Insert</b> again and repeat this step, otherwise continue with the next step.</p>
---	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Procedure 25 Configure the Signaling Devices

7	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Configure the Signaling Interfaces of the MP-Part 1 (multiple pairs of enclosure switches without bonded interfaces)</p>	<p>Select the appropriate Ethernet interface and click <b>Edit</b>.</p>  <p>The following screen should be displayed.</p> <p>Verify that the blade name on the top corresponds to the MP.</p> <p><b>Edit Ethernet device eth21 on dsrMP-A</b></p> <p><b>General Options</b> <b>MII Monitoring Options</b> <b>ARP Monitoring Options</b> <b>IP Interfaces</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field</th><th>Value</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Device Type</td><td> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Ethernet  <input type="radio"/> Bonding  <input type="radio"/> Vlan  <input type="radio"/> Alias         </td><td>Select the device type. It cannot be changed after device Alias.]</td></tr> <tr> <td>Device Monitoring</td><td>— Monitoring Type —</td><td>Choose a monitoring style to use with a bonded device Options = MII, ARP.]</td></tr> <tr> <td>Start On Boot</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable</td><td>Start the device, and also start on boot. [Default = enable]</td></tr> <tr> <td>Boot Protocol</td><td>None</td><td>Select the boot protocol. [Default = None, Range = [None, 128]]</td></tr> <tr> <td>Base Device (s)</td><td> <input type="checkbox"/> bond0  <input type="checkbox"/> bond0.4  <input type="checkbox"/> eth01  <input type="checkbox"/> eth02  <input type="checkbox"/> eth03  <input type="checkbox"/> eth04  <input type="checkbox"/> eth21  <input type="checkbox"/> eth22  <input type="checkbox"/> eth23  <input type="checkbox"/> eth24         </td><td>The base device(s) for Bonding, Alias and Vlan device Bonding devices require 2 selections. It cannot be changed after device Alias.]</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Continue to the next step.</p>	Field	Value	Description	Device Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Ethernet <input type="radio"/> Bonding <input type="radio"/> Vlan <input type="radio"/> Alias	Select the device type. It cannot be changed after device Alias.]	Device Monitoring	— Monitoring Type —	Choose a monitoring style to use with a bonded device Options = MII, ARP.]	Start On Boot	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	Start the device, and also start on boot. [Default = enable]	Boot Protocol	None	Select the boot protocol. [Default = None, Range = [None, 128]]	Base Device (s)	<input type="checkbox"/> bond0 <input type="checkbox"/> bond0.4 <input type="checkbox"/> eth01 <input type="checkbox"/> eth02 <input type="checkbox"/> eth03 <input type="checkbox"/> eth04 <input type="checkbox"/> eth21 <input type="checkbox"/> eth22 <input type="checkbox"/> eth23 <input type="checkbox"/> eth24	The base device(s) for Bonding, Alias and Vlan device Bonding devices require 2 selections. It cannot be changed after device Alias.]
Field	Value	Description																		
Device Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Ethernet <input type="radio"/> Bonding <input type="radio"/> Vlan <input type="radio"/> Alias	Select the device type. It cannot be changed after device Alias.]																		
Device Monitoring	— Monitoring Type —	Choose a monitoring style to use with a bonded device Options = MII, ARP.]																		
Start On Boot	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	Start the device, and also start on boot. [Default = enable]																		
Boot Protocol	None	Select the boot protocol. [Default = None, Range = [None, 128]]																		
Base Device (s)	<input type="checkbox"/> bond0 <input type="checkbox"/> bond0.4 <input type="checkbox"/> eth01 <input type="checkbox"/> eth02 <input type="checkbox"/> eth03 <input type="checkbox"/> eth04 <input type="checkbox"/> eth21 <input type="checkbox"/> eth22 <input type="checkbox"/> eth23 <input type="checkbox"/> eth24	The base device(s) for Bonding, Alias and Vlan device Bonding devices require 2 selections. It cannot be changed after device Alias.]																		

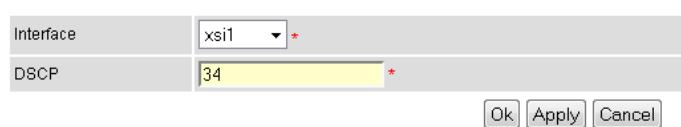
## Procedure 25 Configure the Signaling Devices

8	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Configure the Signaling Interfaces of the MP-Part 2 (multiple pairs of enclosure switches without bonded interfaces)</p>	<p><b>Start on Boot: Verify that the checkbox is selected.</b></p> <p><b>Boot Protocol: verify that it is set to None</b></p>  <p>Now Click on the <b>IP Interfaces</b> tab as shown below.</p> <p><b>Insert Device on blade09</b></p>  <p>Now Click on <b>Add Row</b>, the following will be displayed</p>  <p>Select the first <b>Signaling Network</b> from the drop down menu.</p> <p>Enter the IP address that corresponds to the IPv4 or IPv6 interface.</p> <p>Click on <b>OK</b> at the bottom of the screen.</p>  <p>Now repeat this step to configure the second signaling interface (eth22).</p>
9	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Configure the Interfaces of the other MPs.</p>	<p>Repeat this procedure to configure the signaling devices of all other MPs.</p>

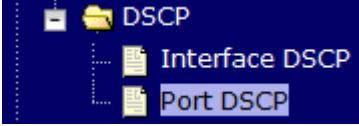
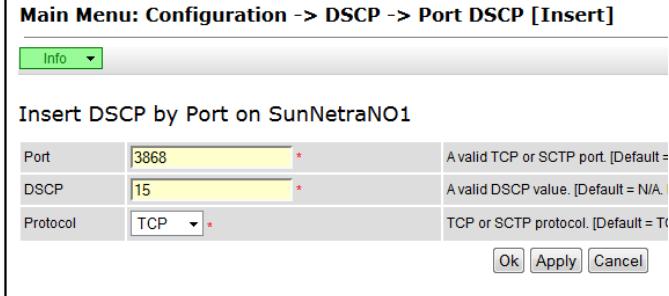
## Procedure 26 Configure DSCP Values for Outgoing Traffic (Optional)

<b>S</b>	This procedure will provide the steps to configure the DSCP values for outgoing packets on servers.
<b>T</b>	DSCP values can be applied to an outbound interface as a whole, or to all outbound traffic using a specific TCP or SCTP source port. This step is optional and should only be executed if has been decided that your network will utilize packet DSCP markings for Quality-of-Service purposes.
<b>E</b>	
<b>P</b>	
<b>#</b>	<p><b>Note:</b> If your enclosure switches already have DSCP configuration for the signaling VLANs, then the switch configuration will override the settings in this procedure. It is strongly recommended, however, that you configure DSCP here at the application level where you have the most knowledge about outgoing traffic patterns and qualities.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
1	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p> <p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of: <b>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</b></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p> 

## Procedure 26 Configure DSCP Values for Outgoing Traffic (Optional)

2	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP</b> <b>GUI: Option 1:</b> Configure Interface DSCP</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> The values displayed in the screenshots are for demonstration purposes only. The exact DSCP values for your site will vary.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; DSCP -&gt; Interface DSCP</b></p>  <p>Select the server you wish to configure from the list of servers on the 2<sup>nd</sup> line. (You can view all servers with <b>Entire Network</b> selected; or limit yourself to a particular server group by clicking on that server group name's tab).</p> <p>Click <b>Insert</b></p>  <p>Main Menu: Configuration -&gt; DSCP -&gt; Interface DSCP</p>  <p>Select the network interface from the drop down box, then enter the <i>DSCP value</i> you wish to have applied to packets leaving this interface.</p> <p>Main Menu: [Insertdscpbyintf]</p>  <p>Insert DSCP by Interface on FZTEST-MP1</p>  <p>Click <b>OK</b> if there are no more interfaces on this server to configure, or <b>Apply</b> to finish this interface and continue on with more interfaces by selecting them from the drop down and entering their <i>DSCP values</i>.</p>
---	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

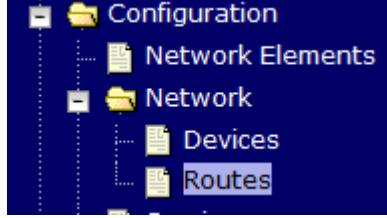
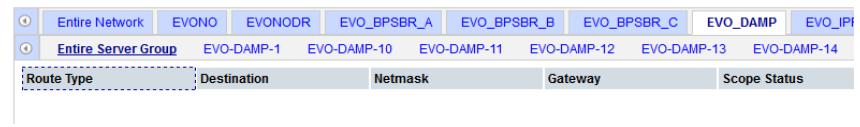
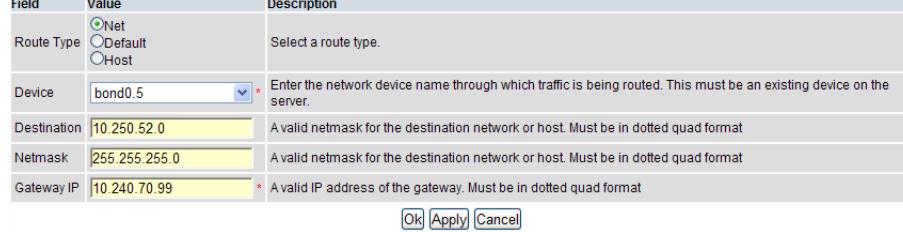
## Procedure 26 Configure DSCP Values for Outgoing Traffic (Optional)

<p>3 <input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Option 2:          Configure Port DSCP</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> The values displayed in the screenshots are for demonstration purposes only. The exact DSCP values for your site will vary.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; DSCP -&gt; Port DSCP</b></p>  <p>Select the server you wish to configure from the list of servers on the 2<sup>nd</sup> line. (You can view all servers with <b>Entire Network</b> selected; or limit yourself to a particular server group by clicking on that server group name's tab).</p> <p>Click <b>Insert</b></p> <p><b>Main Menu: Configuration -&gt; DSCP -&gt; Port DSCP</b></p>  <p>Enter the source port, DSCP value, and select the transport protocol.</p> <p><b>Main Menu: Configuration -&gt; DSCP -&gt; Port DSCP [Insert]</b></p>  <p>Click <b>OK</b> if there are no more port DSCPs on this server to configure, or <b>Apply</b> to finish this port entry and continue entering more port <i>DSCP mappings</i>.</p> <p>4 <input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Repeat for additional servers.</p> <p>Repeat <b>Steps 2-3</b> for all remaining servers.</p>

## Procedure 27 Configure the Signaling Network Routes

<b>S</b>	This procedure will provide the steps to configure Signaling Network Routes on MP-type servers (DA-MP, IPFE, SBR, SS7-MP, etc.)	
<b>T</b>	Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.	
If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.		
1 □	<b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of: <b>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</b></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p> 

## Procedure 27 Configure the Signaling Network Routes

2	<b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Navigate to Routes Configuration Screen	Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Network -&gt; Routes</b>
		
	<b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Navigate to Routes Configuration Screen	<p>Select the first MP Server you see listed on the first row of tabs as shown, then click the <b>Entire Server Group</b> link. Initially, no routes should be displayed.</p> 
3	<b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Add Route	<p>Click on <b>Insert</b> at the bottom of the screen to add additional routes.</p> 
4	<b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Add Default Route for MPs Going Through Signaling Network Gateway (Optional)	<p><b>OPTIONAL</b> - Only execute this step if you performed <b>Procedure 20 Step 10</b>: which removed the XMI gateway default route on MPs</p> <p>If your MP servers no longer have a default route, then you can now insert a default route here which uses one of the signaling network gateways.</p>  <p><b>Route Type: Default</b></p> <p><b>Device:</b> Select the signaling device that is directly attached to the network where the XSI default gateway resides.</p> <p><b>Gateway IP:</b> The XSI gateway you wish to use for default signaling network access.</p> <p>Select <b>OK</b></p> 

## Procedure 27 Configure the Signaling Network Routes

<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">5</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">□</span>	<p><b>NOAM VIP</b></p> <p><b>GUI: Add Network Routes for Diameter Peers</b></p> <p>Use this step to add IP and/or IPv6 routes to <i>diameter</i> peer destination networks. The goal here is to ensure that diameter traffic uses the gateway(s) on the signaling networks.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left; padding: 2px;">Field</th><th style="text-align: left; padding: 2px;">Value</th><th style="text-align: left; padding: 2px;">Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">Route Type</td><td style="padding: 2px;"><input checked="" type="radio"/> Net <input type="radio"/> Default <input type="radio"/> Host</td><td style="padding: 2px;">Select a route type.</td></tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">Device</td><td style="padding: 2px;"><input type="text" value="bond0.5"/> <span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">▼</span></td><td style="padding: 2px;">* Enter the network device name through which traffic is being routed. This must be an existing device on the server.</td></tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">Destination</td><td style="padding: 2px;"><input type="text" value="10.250.46.0"/></td><td style="padding: 2px;">A valid netmask for the destination network or host. Must be in dotted quad format</td></tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">Netmask</td><td style="padding: 2px;"><input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/></td><td style="padding: 2px;">A valid netmask for the destination network or host. Must be in dotted quad format</td></tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">Gateway IP</td><td style="padding: 2px;"><input type="text" value="10.240.70.99"/></td><td style="padding: 2px;">* A valid IP address of the gateway. Must be in dotted quad format</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <div style="text-align: right; margin-top: 5px;"> <span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 5px;">Ok</span> <span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 5px;">Apply</span> <span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 5px;">Cancel</span> </div> <p><b>Route Type: Net</b></p> <p><b>Device:</b> Select the appropriate signaling interface that will be used to connect to that network</p> <p><b>Destination:</b> Enter the Network ID of Network to which the peer node is connected to.</p> <p><b>Netmask:</b> Enter the corresponding Netmask.</p> <p><b>Gateway IP:</b> Enter the Int-XSI switch VIP of the chosen Network for L3 deployments (either of int-XSI-1 or of int-XSI2). Or the IP of the customer gateway for L2 deployments.</p> <p>If you have more routes to enter, Press <b>Apply</b> to save the current route entry and repeat this step to enter more routes</p> <p>If you are finished entering routes, Press <b>OK</b> to save the latest route and leave this screen.</p> <p><b>Layer 3 Configurations Aggregation Switch Configurations Only:</b> Routes should be configured on the aggregation switches so that the destination networks configured in this step are reachable. This can be done by running the following <b>netconfig</b> commands from the site's local PMAC (examples shown -- actual values will vary) :</p> <p>Add routes (IPv4 &amp; IPv6):</p> <pre>\$ sudo netConfig -device=switch1A addRoute network=10.10.10.0 mask=25.255.255.0 nexhop=10.50.76.81 \$ sudo netConfig -device=switch1A addRoute network6=2001::/64 nexhop=fd0f::1</pre> <p>Delete routes (IPv4 &amp; IPv6):</p> <pre>\$ sudo netConfig -device=switch1A deleteRoute network=10.10.10.0 mask=25.255.255.0 nexhop=10.50.76.81 \$ sudo netConfig -device=switch1A deleteRoute network6=2001::/64 nexhop=fd0f::1</pre> </div>	Field	Value	Description	Route Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Net <input type="radio"/> Default <input type="radio"/> Host	Select a route type.	Device	<input type="text" value="bond0.5"/> <span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">▼</span>	* Enter the network device name through which traffic is being routed. This must be an existing device on the server.	Destination	<input type="text" value="10.250.46.0"/>	A valid netmask for the destination network or host. Must be in dotted quad format	Netmask	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>	A valid netmask for the destination network or host. Must be in dotted quad format	Gateway IP	<input type="text" value="10.240.70.99"/>	* A valid IP address of the gateway. Must be in dotted quad format
Field	Value	Description																	
Route Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Net <input type="radio"/> Default <input type="radio"/> Host	Select a route type.																	
Device	<input type="text" value="bond0.5"/> <span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">▼</span>	* Enter the network device name through which traffic is being routed. This must be an existing device on the server.																	
Destination	<input type="text" value="10.250.46.0"/>	A valid netmask for the destination network or host. Must be in dotted quad format																	
Netmask	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>	A valid netmask for the destination network or host. Must be in dotted quad format																	
Gateway IP	<input type="text" value="10.240.70.99"/>	* A valid IP address of the gateway. Must be in dotted quad format																	

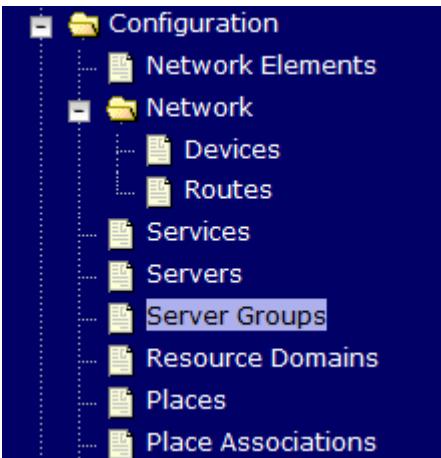
## Procedure 27 Configure the Signaling Network Routes

6	<b>Local PMAC:</b> Perform a netConfig Backup	<p>After the routes are added to the aggregation switches via netconfig, a <b>netconfig backup</b> should be taken so that the new routes are retained in the backup.</p> <p>Execute the following command:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"><pre>\$ netConfig backupConfiguration -device=&lt;Switch Hostname -service=&lt;ssh_Service&gt; --filename=&lt;Backup Filename&gt;</pre></div>
7	<b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Repeat for all other MP server groups.	<p>The routes entered in this procedure should now be configured on all MPs in the server group for the first MP you selected.</p> <p>If you have additional MP server groups, repeat from <b>step 2</b>, but this time, select an MP from the next MP server group.</p> <p>Continue until you have covered all MP server groups.</p>

### Procedure 28 Add VIP for Signaling networks (Active/Standby Configurations Only)

<b>S T E P #</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the VIPs for the signaling networks on the MPs.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
<b>1</b> <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:  <b>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</b></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p>  <p>Fri Mar 20 12:29:52 2015 EDT</p>

**Procedure 28 Add VIP for Signaling networks (Active/Standby Configurations Only)**

<p><b>NOAM VIP</b>  <b>GUI:</b> Edit the MP Server Group and add VIPs          (ONLY FOR 1+1)</p>	<p><b>IF YOUR MPs ARE IN A DSR MULTI-ACTIVE CLUSTER SERVER GROUP CONFIGURATION (N+0), THEN SKIP THIS STEP</b></p> <p>From <b>Main Menu-&gt;Configuration-&gt;Server Groups</b></p>  <p>Select the MP server group, and then select <b>Edit</b></p> <p><b>Insert</b> <b>Edit</b> <b>Delete</b> <b>Report</b></p> <p>Click on <b>Add</b> to add the VIP for XSI1          Enter the VIP of int-XSI-1 and click on <b>Apply</b></p> <p>Click on <b>Add</b> again to add the VIP for XSI2          Enter the VIP of int-XSI-2 and click on <b>Apply</b></p> <p>If more Signaling networks exist, add their corresponding VIP addresses.</p> <p>Finally Click on <b>OK</b>.</p> 
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## 4.12 Application Configuration: SNMP (Optional)

### Procedure 29 Configure SNMP Trap Receiver(s) (Optional)

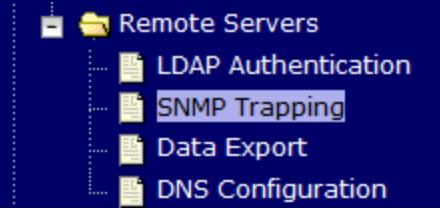
**S** This procedure will provide the steps to configure forwarding of SNMP Traps from each individual server.

**T** Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

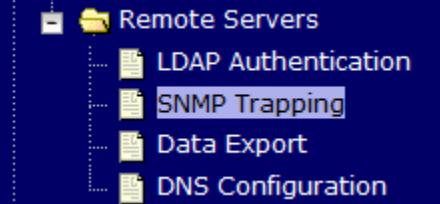
**E** If this procedure fails, contact **Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)**, and ask for assistance.

1	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p> <p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of: <b>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</b></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p>
---	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

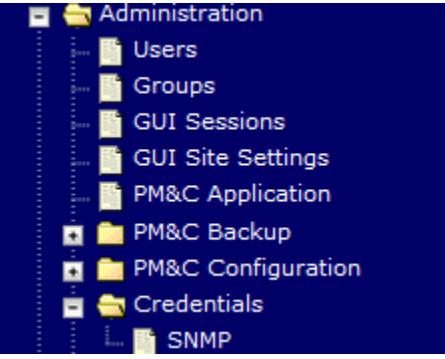
## Procedure 29 Configure SNMP Trap Receiver(s) (Optional)

2 <b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Configure System-Wide SNMP Trap Receiver(s)	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Administration -&gt; Remote Servers -&gt; SNMP Trapping</b></p>  <p>Verify that <b>Traps Enabled</b> is checked:</p>  <p>Fill in the IP address or hostname of the Network Management Station (NMS) you wish to forward traps to. This IP should be reachable from the NOAMP's "XMI" network.</p> <p>Continue to fill in additional secondary, tertiary, etc. Manager IPs in the corresponding slots if desired.</p> <table border="1"><thead><tr><th>Variable</th><th>Value</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>Manager 1</td><td>10.10.55.88</td></tr></tbody></table> <p>Enter the <b>SNMP Community Name</b>:</p> <table border="1"><tbody><tr><td>SNMPv2c Read-Only Community Name</td><td>snmppublic</td></tr><tr><td>SNMPv2c Read-Write Community Name</td><td>snmppublic</td></tr></tbody></table> <p>Leave all other fields at their default values.</p> <p>Press <b>OK</b></p>	Variable	Value	Manager 1	10.10.55.88	SNMPv2c Read-Only Community Name	snmppublic	SNMPv2c Read-Write Community Name	snmppublic
Variable	Value								
Manager 1	10.10.55.88								
SNMPv2c Read-Only Community Name	snmppublic								
SNMPv2c Read-Write Community Name	snmppublic								

## Procedure 29 Configure SNMP Trap Receiver(s) (Optional)

<p>3 <input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAMP</b>  <b>VIP:</b> Enable Traps from Individual Servers (Optional)</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> By default SNMP traps from MPs are aggregated and then displayed at the active NOAMP. If instead, you wish for every server to send its own traps directly to the NMS, then execute this procedure.</p> <p>This procedure requires that all servers, including MPs, have an XMI interface on which the customer SNMP Target server (NMS) is reachable.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Administration -&gt; Remote Servers -&gt; SNMP Trapping</b></p>  <p>Make sure the checkbox next to <b>Enabled</b> is checked, if not, check it as shown below</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Traps from Individual Servers</td><td> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled         </td><td> <small>[Default: enabled.]</small>            Enable or disable SNMP traps from individual servers, otherwise sent from the OAM&amp;P server. [Default: disabled.]  <small>Configured Community Name (SNMP)</small> </td></tr> </table> <p>Then click on <b>Apply</b> and verify that the data is committed.</p>	Traps from Individual Servers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<small>[Default: enabled.]</small> Enable or disable SNMP traps from individual servers, otherwise sent from the OAM&P server. [Default: disabled.] <small>Configured Community Name (SNMP)</small>
Traps from Individual Servers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	<small>[Default: enabled.]</small> Enable or disable SNMP traps from individual servers, otherwise sent from the OAM&P server. [Default: disabled.] <small>Configured Community Name (SNMP)</small>		
<p>4 <input type="checkbox"/> <b>PMAC GUI:</b>            Login (DSR 7.0 Only)</p>	<p><b>DSR 7.0 Only. For DSR 7.1, skip to step 7</b></p> <p>Open web browser and enter:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto; font-family: monospace;"> <code>http://&lt;PMAC_Mgmt_Network_IP&gt;</code> </div> <p>Login as <b>pmacadmin</b> user:</p> 			

## Procedure 29 Configure SNMP Trap Receiver(s) (Optional)

5 <input type="checkbox"/> <b>PMAC GUI:</b> Update the TVOE Host SNMP Community String (DSR 7.0 Only)	<p><b>DSR 7.0 Only. For DSR 7.1, skip to step 7</b></p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Administration -&gt; Credentials -&gt; SNMP</b></p>  <p>Select the <b>Read Only</b> or <b>ReadWrite</b> button depending on which SNMP community string is to be updated.</p> <p><b>SNMP Community String Update</b></p> <p>Tasks ▾</p> <p>Select Read Only or Read/Write Community String: <input checked="" type="radio"/> Read Only <input type="radio"/> Read/Write</p> <p>Check this box if updating servers using the Site Specific SNMP Community String: <input type="checkbox"/> Use Site Specific Read Only Community String: TPDverejny</p> <p>Community String: <input type="text"/> Note: The Community String value can be 1 to 31 uppercase, lowercase, or numeric characters.</p> <p><input type="button" value="Update Servers"/></p> <p><b>Note:</b> If this is the first time the SNMP Community Strings has been updated for this PMAC, perform the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Leave the Use Site Specific checkbox (<i>TPDverejny</i>) unchecked.</li><li>2. Enter the community string configured in step 2 of this procedure.</li></ol>
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Procedure 29 Configure SNMP Trap Receiver(s) (Optional)

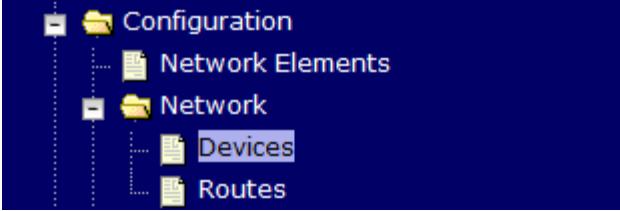
<p>6 <input type="checkbox"/> <b>PMAC GUI:</b> Update the TVOE Host SNMP Community String (DSR 7.0 Only)</p>	<p><b>DSR 7.0 Only. For DSR 7.1, skip to step 7</b></p> <p>Continued from the previous step, enter the new Community String into the Community string textbox.</p> <p>Click the <b>Update Servers</b> button</p> <p><b>Update Servers</b></p> <p>The following warning will be displayed:</p> <p>You are about to update the Read Only SNMP Credentials on all known supporting TVOE servers and the PM&amp;C guest on the control network of this PM&amp;C. Changing of SNMP Community Strings is only supported across product release versions that support this functionality and attempting to do so with product versions not supporting it may cause the system to become inoperable.</p> <p>Are you sure you want to continue?</p> <p><b>OK</b> <b>Cancel</b></p> <p>Select <b>OK</b></p> <p><b>Note:</b> When this operation is initiated, all supporting TVOE hosting servers and the PMAC guest on the PMAC control network will be updated. All those servers that match the existing Site Specific Community String will not be updated again until the string name is changed.</p>
<p>7 <input type="checkbox"/> <b>PMAC:</b> Establish an SSH Session</p>	<p><b>DSR 7.1 Only. For DSR 7.0, skip this step.</b></p> <p>Establish an SSH session to the PMAC, login as <b>admusr</b>.</p>
<p>8 <input type="checkbox"/> <b>PMAC:</b> Update the PMAC Community String</p>	<p><b>DSR 7.1 Only. For DSR 7.0, skip this step.</b></p> <p>Execute the following command to update the PMAC community string to the one configured in <b>step 2</b> of this document:</p> <pre>\$ sudo pmaccli setCommStr --accessType=rw --commStr=&lt;community string from step 2&gt;</pre>
<p>9 <input type="checkbox"/> <b>PMAC:</b> Verify Updated Community String</p>	<p><b>DSR 7.1 Only. For DSR 7.0, skip this step.</b></p> <p>Execute the following command to verify the updated community string. The output of the command should display the community string set in <b>step 8</b>:</p> <pre>\$ sudo pmaccli getCommStrStatus</pre>

## 4.13 Application Configuration: IP Front End (IPFE)

### Procedure 30 IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration (Optional)

<b>S</b> <b>T</b> <b>E</b> <b>P</b> <b>#</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure IP Front End (IPFE), and optimize performance.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
<b>1</b> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p> <p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:  <b>http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</b></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p>
<b>2</b> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b></p> <p>Determine whether the Appworks update Script needs to be executed</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If you converted a <b>Discovered</b> device to a <b>Configured</b> device on the <b>Configuration -&gt; Network -&gt; Devices</b> and are using the converted device for an IPFE XSI interface, complete this procedure.</p> <p><b>Otherwise, skip to step 4.</b></p> <p><b>Note:</b> If you do not recall whether any IPFE devices were converted, complete the following step.</p>
<b>3</b> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Execute the AppWorks update Scripts. (DSR 7.0)</p> <p><b>DSR 7.0 ONLY, DSR 7.1 skip to step 8</b></p> <p>Execute the following command:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;"> <b>\$ sudo ipfeAppworksUpdate.sh</b> </div>

### Procedure 30 IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration (Optional)

4	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Verify the Appworks update Script ran. (DSR 7.0)</p>	<p><b>DSR 7.0 ONLY</b></p> <p>Select <b>Configuration -&gt; Network -&gt; Devices</b></p>  <p>Select the tabs for the <b>IPFE</b>. Verify that, for devices that were converted to <b>Configured</b> from <b>Discovered</b>, the following information is seen in the Device Options column:</p> <pre>ethtoolOpts = --set-ring eth04 rx 4078; --offload eth04 gro off gso off onboot = no</pre>
5	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>1<sup>st</sup> IPFE Server:</b> Execute the ipfeNetUpdate script and reboot.(DSR 7.0)</p>	<p><b>DSR 7.0 ONLY</b></p> <p>Establish an SSH session to the IPFE server. Login as <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>Execute the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo ipfeNetUpdate.sh</pre> <p>Now reboot the IPFE Server:</p> <pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre>

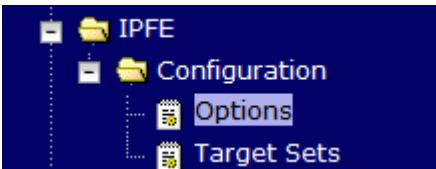
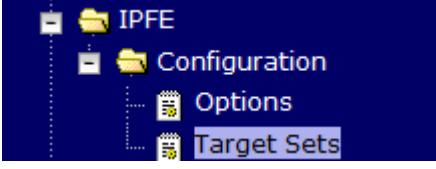
### Procedure 30 IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration (Optional)

6	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>1<sup>st</sup> IPFE:</b> Verify the ipfeNetUpdate script ran. (DSR 7.0)</p>	<p><b>DSR 7.0 ONLY</b></p> <p>After the IPFE server reboots, re-establish the ssh session and login as <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>Execute the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo cat /etc/sysconfig/network  NETWORKING=yes NETWORKING_IPV6=yes NTPSERVERARGS=iburst HOSTNAME= &lt;hostname of IPFE Server&gt; IPV6INIT=yes IPV6FORWARDING=yes</pre> <p>Execute the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo cat /etc/modprobe.d/bnx2x.conf  options bnx2x num_queues=25 disable_tpa=1</pre> <p>Execute the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo cat /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth01  ETHTOOL_OPTS="--set-ring eth01 rx 4078; --offload eth01 gro off gso off"</pre>
7	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Additional IPFE servers:</b> Repeat for additional IPFE Servers. (DSR 7.0)</p>	<p>Repeat <b>steps 5-6</b> for additional IPFE servers.</p>

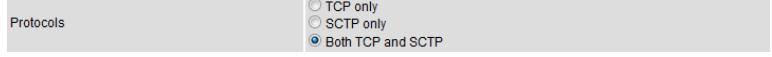
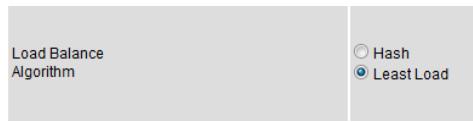
### Procedure 30 IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration (Optional)

8	<b>SOAM VIP GUI: Login</b>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the SOAM server the VIP IP address of the SOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of: <b>http://&lt;Primary_SOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</b></p> <p>Login to the SOAM GUI as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p> 
---	----------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

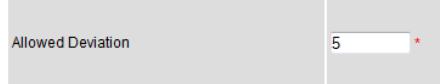
### Procedure 30 IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration (Optional)

9	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Configuration of replication IPFE association data.</p>	<p>Select <b>Main Menu -&gt; IPFE -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Options</b></p>  <p>Enter the IP address of the 1<sup>st</sup> IPFE in the IPFE-A1 IP Address field and the IP address of the 2<sup>nd</sup> IPFE in the IPFE-A2 IP Address field</p> <p>If applicable, enter the address of the 3<sup>rd</sup> and 4<sup>th</sup> IPFE servers in IPFE-B1 IP Address and IPFE-B2 IP Address fields.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Variable</th><th>Value</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="2"><b>Inter-IPFE Synchronization</b></td></tr> <tr> <td>IPFE-A1 IP Address</td><td>10.240.79.103 - Viper-IPFE1</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPFE-A2 IP Address</td><td>10.240.79.104 - Viper-IPFE2</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPFE-B1 IP Address</td><td>&lt;unset&gt;</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPFE-B2 IP Address</td><td>&lt;unset&gt;</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Note:</b> It is recommended that the address reside on the IMI (Internal Management Interface) network.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> IPFE-A1 and IPFE-A2 must have connectivity between each other via these addresses. The same applies with IPFE-B1 and IPFE-B2.</p>	Variable	Value	<b>Inter-IPFE Synchronization</b>		IPFE-A1 IP Address	10.240.79.103 - Viper-IPFE1	IPFE-A2 IP Address	10.240.79.104 - Viper-IPFE2	IPFE-B1 IP Address	<unset>	IPFE-B2 IP Address	<unset>
Variable	Value													
<b>Inter-IPFE Synchronization</b>														
IPFE-A1 IP Address	10.240.79.103 - Viper-IPFE1													
IPFE-A2 IP Address	10.240.79.104 - Viper-IPFE2													
IPFE-B1 IP Address	<unset>													
IPFE-B2 IP Address	<unset>													
10	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Configuration of IPFE Target sets-Part 1 (Insert Target Set)</p>	<p>Select <b>Main Menu -&gt; IPFE -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Target Sets</b></p>  <p>Select either <b>Insert IPv4</b> or <b>Insert IPv6</b> button, depending on the IP version of the target set you plan to use.</p> <p><b>Insert IPv4</b> <b>Insert IPv6</b> <b>Edit</b> <b>Delete</b></p>												

### Procedure 30 IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration (Optional)

11	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Configuration of IPFE Target sets-Part 2 (Target Set Configuration)</p>	<p>Continued from the previous step, the following are configurable:</p> <p><b>Protocols:</b> protocols the target set will support.</p>  <p><b>Delete Age:</b> Specifies when the IPFE should remove its association data for a connection. Any packets presenting a source IP address/port combination that had been previously stored as association state but have been idle longer than the <b>Delete Age</b> configuration will be treated as a new connection and will not automatically go to the same application server.</p>  <p><b>Load Balance Algorithm:</b> <i>Hash</i> or <i>Least Load</i> options</p>  <p><b>Note:</b> In order for the IPFE to provide Least Load distribution, <b>Main Menu -&gt; IPFE -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Options</b>, Monitoring Protocol must be set to <i>Heartbeat</i> so that the application servers can provide the load information the IPFE uses to select the <i>least-loaded</i> server for connections.</p>  <p><b>Note:</b> The Least Load option is the default setting, and is the recommended option with exception of unique backward compatibility scenarios.</p> <p>Establish an SSH session to the SOAM VIP, login as <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>Execute the following command (advise cut and paste to prevent errors):</p> <pre>\$ sudo iset -fvalue="50" DpiOption where "name='MpEngIngressMpsPercentile'" ==== changed 1 records ===</pre>
12	<p><b>SOAM VIP:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Set Ingress MPS percentile (DSR 7.0 ONLY)</p>	<p><b>For DSR 7.0 ONLY, If DSR 7.1, skip this step</b></p> <p>Establish an SSH session to the SOAM VIP, login as <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>Execute the following command (advise cut and paste to prevent errors):</p> <pre>\$ sudo iset -fvalue="50" DpiOption where "name='MpEngIngressMpsPercentile'" ==== changed 1 records ===</pre>

### Procedure 30 IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration (Optional)

13	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b>          Configuration of IPFE Target sets-Part 3 (Target Set Configuration)</p>	<p><b>(Optional):</b> If you have selected the <b>Least Load algorithm</b>, you may configure the following fields to adjust the algorithm's behavior:</p> <p><b>MPS Factor</b> – Messages per Second (MPS) is one component of the least load algorithm. This field allows you to set it from 0 (not used in load calculations) to 100 (the only component used for load calculations). It is recommended that IPFE connections have Reserved Ingress MPS set to something other than the default, which is 0.</p>  <p>To configure <b>Reserved Ingress MPS</b>, go to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Diameter -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Configuration Sets -&gt; Capacity Configuration Sets</b>. If you choose not to use <b>Reserved Ingress MPS</b>, set <b>MPS Factor</b> to 0 and <b>Connection Count Factor</b>, described below, to 100.</p> <p><b>Connection Count Factor</b> – This is the other component of the <b>least load</b> algorithm. This field allows you to set it from 0 (not used in load calculations) to 100 (the only component used for load calculations). Increase this setting if connection storms (the arrival of many connections at a very rapid rate) are a concern.</p> <p><b>Allowed Deviation</b> - Percentage within which two application server's load calculation results are considered to be equal. If very short, intense connection bursts are expected to occur, increase the value to smooth out the distribution.</p> 
----	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### Procedure 30 IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration (Optional)

14	<p><b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Configuration of IPFE Target sets-Part 4 (Target Set Configuration)</p>	<p><b>Primary Public IP Address:</b> IP address for the target set</p> <p><b>Primary Public IP Address</b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Address</td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> <tr> <td>Active IPFE</td><td> <input checked="" type="radio"/> IPFE A1 ----- IPFE A2 <input type="radio"/>  <input type="radio"/> IPFE B1 ----- IPFE B2 <input type="radio"/> </td></tr> </table> <p><b>Note:</b> This address must reside on the XSI (External Signaling Interface) network because it will be used by the application clients to reach the application servers. This address MUST NOT be a real interface address (that is, must not be associated with a network interface card).</p> <p>Active IPFE: IPFE to handle the traffic for the target set address.</p> <p><b>Secondary Public IP Address:</b> If this target set supports either multi-homed SCTP or Both TCP and SCTP, provide a Secondary IP Address.</p> <p><b>Secondary Public IP Address<sup>†</sup></b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Secondary Address</td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr> <tr> <td>Active IPFE for secondary address</td><td> <input checked="" type="radio"/> IPFE A1 ----- IPFE A2 <input type="radio"/>  <input type="radio"/> IPFE B1 ----- IPFE B2 <input type="radio"/> </td></tr> </table> <p><b>Note:</b> A secondary address is required to support SCTP multi-homing. A secondary address can support TCP, but the TCP connections will not be multi-homed.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If SCTP multi-homing is to be supported, select the mate IPFE of the Active IPFE for the Active IPFE for secondary address to ensure that SCTP failover functions as designed.</p> <p><b>Target Set IP List:</b> Select an IP address, a secondary IP address if supporting SCTP multi-homing, a description, and a weight for the application server.</p> <p><b>Target Set IP List</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>IP Address</th><th>Secondary IP Address</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>01 - Select -</td><td>- Select -</td></tr> <tr> <td colspan="2"><b>Add</b></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Note:</b> The IP address must be on the XSI network since they must be on the same network as the target set address. This address must also match the IP version of the target set address (IPv4 or IPv6). If the Secondary Public IP Address is configured, it must reside on the same application server as the first IP address.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If all application servers have an equal weight (e.g., 100, which is the default), they have an equal chance of being selected. Application servers with larger weights have a greater chance of being selected.</p> <p>Click the <b>Add</b> button to add more application servers (Up to 16)</p> <p>Click the <b>Apply</b> button.</p> <p><b>Ok</b> <b>Apply</b> <b>Cancel</b></p>	Address	<input type="text"/>	Active IPFE	<input checked="" type="radio"/> IPFE A1 ----- IPFE A2 <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> IPFE B1 ----- IPFE B2 <input type="radio"/>	Secondary Address	<input type="text"/>	Active IPFE for secondary address	<input checked="" type="radio"/> IPFE A1 ----- IPFE A2 <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> IPFE B1 ----- IPFE B2 <input type="radio"/>	IP Address	Secondary IP Address	01 - Select -	- Select -	<b>Add</b>	
Address	<input type="text"/>															
Active IPFE	<input checked="" type="radio"/> IPFE A1 ----- IPFE A2 <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> IPFE B1 ----- IPFE B2 <input type="radio"/>															
Secondary Address	<input type="text"/>															
Active IPFE for secondary address	<input checked="" type="radio"/> IPFE A1 ----- IPFE A2 <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> IPFE B1 ----- IPFE B2 <input type="radio"/>															
IP Address	Secondary IP Address															
01 - Select -	- Select -															
<b>Add</b>																

### Procedure 30 IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration (Optional)

15	<b>SOAM VIP</b> <b>GUI:</b> Repeat for additional Configuration of IPFE Target sets.	Repeat for <b>steps 10-13</b> for each target set (Up to 16). At least one target set must be configured.
----	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## 4.14 IDIH Installation and Configuration (DSR 7.1-Optional)

The following procedures outline the steps needed to install and configure IDIH.

**Note:** If there already exists an IDIH, and this is an IDIH re-installation; execute **Appendix M: IDIH External Drive Removal** before proceeding.

### 4.14.1 IDIH Installation

This procedure is part of DSR 7.1 software installation. The installation procedure uses the “fast deployment” utility (fdconfig) bundled with the PMAC server to install and configure IDIH.

#### Procedure 31 IDIH Configuration (DSR 7.1-Optional)

<b>S</b>	This procedure will provide the steps to install and configure IDIH.
<b>T</b>	<b>Note:</b> For DSR 7.0, refer to [25].
<b>E</b>	
<b>P</b>	
<b>#</b>	Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.
	If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.
1	<p><b>TVOE Host:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Load Application ISO</p> <p>Add the Application ISO images (<b>Mediation, application, and Oracle</b>) to the PM&amp;C, this can be done in one of three ways:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Insert the Application CD required by the application into the removable media drive.</li><li>2. Attach the USB device containing the ISO image to a USB port.</li><li>3. Copy the Application iso file to the PM&amp;C server into the <b>/var/TKLC/smac/image/isoimages/home/smacftpsr/</b> directory as pmacftpsr user: cd into the directory where your ISO image is located on the <b>TVOE Host</b> (<i>not on the PM&amp;C server</i>) Using sftp, connect to the PM&amp;C server</li></ol> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"><pre>\$ sftp pmacftpsr@&lt;pmac_management_network_ip&gt; \$ put &lt;image&gt;.iso</pre></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"><p>After the image transfer is 100% complete, close the connection:</p><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"><pre>\$ quit</pre></div></div>

## Procedure 31 IDIH Configuration (DSR 7.1-Optional)

<input type="checkbox"/>	<b>PMAC GUI:</b> Login	<p>Open web browser and enter:</p> <p><b><a href="http://&lt;PMAC Mgmt Network IP&gt;">http://&lt;PMAC Mgmt Network IP&gt;</a></b></p> <p>Login as <b>pmacadmin</b> user:</p> <p>Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0, 9.0, or 10.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies.</p> <p>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</p> <p>Copyright © 2010, 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<b>PMAC GUI:</b> Attach the software Image to the PMAC Guest	<p>If in Step 1 the ISO image was transferred directly to the PM&amp;C guest via sftp, skip the rest of this step and continue with step 4. If the image is on a CD or USB device, continue with this step.</p> <p>In the PM&amp;C GUI, navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; VM Management</b>. In the "<b>VM Entities</b>" list, select the PM&amp;C guest. On the resulting "<b>View VM Guest</b>" page, select the <b>Media</b> tab.</p> <p>Under the <b>Media</b> tab, find the ISO image in the "<b>Available Media</b>" list, and click its <b>Attach</b> button. After a pause, the image will appear in the "<b>Attached Media</b>" list.</p>

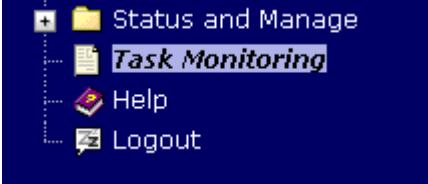
### Procedure 31 IDIH Configuration (DSR 7.1-Optional)

4	<b>PMAC GUI:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Add Application Image	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Software -&gt; Manage Software Images</b></p> <p>Press <b>Add Image</b> button. Use the drop down to select the image.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Add Image</b>   <b>Edit Image</b>   <b>Delete Selected</b></p> <p>If the image was supplied on a CD or a USB drive, it will appear as a virtual device (<b>"device://... "</b>). These devices are assigned in numerical order as CD and USB images become available on the Management Server. The first virtual device is reserved for internal use by TVOE and PMAC; therefore, the iso image of interest is normally present on the second device, <b>"device://dev/sr1"</b>. If one or more CD or USB-based images were already present on the Management Server before you started this procedure, choose a correspondingly higher device number.</p> <p>If in Step 1 the image was transferred to PMAC via sftp it will appear in the list as a local file <b>"./var/TKLC/..."</b>.</p> <p><b>Add Software Image</b></p> <p>Images may be added from any of these sources:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Oracle-provided media in the PM&amp;C host's CD/DVD drive (Refer to Note)</li> <li>• USB media attached to the PM&amp;C's host (Refer to Note)</li> <li>• External mounts. Prefix the directory with "extfile://".</li> <li>• These local search paths:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <i>./var/TKLC/upgrade/*.iso</i></li> <li>◦ <i>./var/TKLC/smac/image/isoimages/home/smacftpsr/*.iso</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>Note: CD and USB images mounted on PM&amp;C's VM host must first be made accessible to the PM&amp;C \</p> <p>Path: <input type="text" value="./var/TKLC/upgrade/DSR-7.1.0.0_71.11.0-x86_64.iso"/></p> <p>Description:</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Add New Image</b></p> <p>Select the appropriate path and Press <b>Add New Image</b> button.</p> <p>You may check the progress using the <b>Task Monitoring</b> link. Observe the green bar indicating success.</p> <p>Once the green bar is displayed, remove the DSR application Media from the optical drive of the management server.</p>
5	<b>PMAC:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Establish Terminal Session	<p>Establish an SSH session to the PMAC. Login as <b>admusr</b>.</p>
6	<b>PMAC:</b> Copy the fdc.cfg file to the pmac guest-dropin directory. <input type="checkbox"/> Copy the fdc.cfg file to the guest-dropin Directory	<p>Copy the fdc.cfg file to the pmac guest-dropin directory.</p> <p>Execute the following command:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;"> <pre>\$ sudo cp /usr/TKLC/smac/html/TPD/mediation-* /fdc.cfg /var/TKLC/smac/guest-dropin</pre> </div>

### Procedure 31 IDIH Configuration (DSR 7.1-Optional)

7	<b>PMAC:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Configure the fdc.cfg file	<p>Configure the fdc.cfg file. See <b>Appendix L: IDIH Fast Deployment Configuration</b> for a breakdown of the parameters.</p> <p>Update the software versions, hostnames, bond interfaces, network addresses, and network VLAN information for the TVOE host and IDIH guests that you are installing.</p>
8	<b>TVOE Host:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Verify/Remove External Devices	<p>Establish an SSH session to the TVOE Host which will host the IDIH, login as <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>On the TVOE host which will host the IDIH, before IDIH has ever been installed, or, after the external disk removal procedure has been successfully completed:</p> <p>Execute the following command:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <pre>\$ ls /dev/sd*</pre> <p>Verify you only have sda* devices (e.g. sda1, sda2, etc...)</p> <p>Expected output:</p> <pre>\$ ls /dev/sd* /dev/sda  /dev/sda1  /dev/sda2  /dev/sda3</pre> </div> <p><b>Note:</b> If any other devices are listed (e.g. sdb*, sdc*, sdd*, etc...) Stop. You must first remove the extra device(s) in your system (e.g. sdb*, sdc*, sdd*, etc...). Reboot the tvoe and verify the extra device(s) are still removed (&gt; ls /dev/sd*)</p>

### Procedure 31 IDIH Configuration (DSR 7.1-Optional)

9	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>PMAC:</b> Run the FDC creation script <code>idihFdc.sh</code></p>	<p>Run the FDC creation script <code>fdc.sh</code>.</p> <p>Execute the following commands:</p> <pre>\$cd /var/TKLC/smac/guest-dropin/ \$usr/TKLC/smac/html/TPD/mediation-7.1.0.0.0_71.x.x-x86_64/fdc.sh fdc.cfg</pre> <p><b>Note:</b> Rename the <code>fdc.cfg</code> file to your preference; also note that two files are generated by the <code>fdc</code> shell script. One is for the Installation procedure and the other file is used for the upgrade procedure. The upgrade FDC is named <code>upgrade</code>.</p> <p>Example: <code>hostname.cfg</code></p> <p>Note: The following hostname for guests has been reserved for internal use. Please try to avoid them:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>oracle</code></li> <li>• <code>mediation</code></li> <li>• <code>appserver</code></li> </ul> <p>Here are the suggested hostname for guests:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>&lt;server hostname&gt;-ora</code> example, <code>thunderbolt-ora</code></li> <li>• <code>&lt;server hostname&gt;-med</code> example, <code>thunderbolt-med</code></li> <li>• <code>&lt;server hostname&gt;-app</code> example, <code>thunderbolt-app</code></li> </ul>
10	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>PMAC:</b> Run the fdconfig.</p>	<p>Run the fdconfig configuration.</p> <p>Execute the following commands:</p> <pre>\$sudo fdconfig config -file=hostname_xx-xx-xx.xml</pre> <p>Example:</p> <pre>\$sudo fdconfig config --file=tvoe-ferbrms4_01-22-15.xml</pre>
11	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>PMAC GUI:</b> Monitor the Configuration</p>	<p>If not already done so, establish a GUI session on the PMAC server.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Task Monitoring</b></p>  <p>Monitor the IDIH configuration to completion.</p>

## 4.14.2 Post IDIH Installation Configuration

The following sections should be executed after IDIH installation is complete.

### 4.14.2.1 IDIH Configuration: Configure DSR Reference Data Synchronization

After an IDIH fresh installation, reference data synchronization is initially disabled. Reference data synchronization requires some initial configuration before it is enabled.

The Trace Ref Data Adapter application must retrieve data from web services hosted by the DSR SOAM web server, and this requires the DSR SOAM virtual IP address (VIP) to be configured.

The DSR SOAM VIP will be unique at each customer site because it is defined based on the customer's network configuration. Therefore, there is no standard default value for the DSR SOAM VIP.

#### Procedure 32 Configure DSR Reference Data Synchronization for IDIH (DSR 7.1-Optional)

S	This procedure will provide the steps to configure DSR reference data syncornization for IDIH	
T	<b>Note:</b> For DSR 7.0, refer to [25].	
E		
P	# Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.	
#	If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.	
1	<b>IDIH Application Server:</b> Login	Establish an SSH session to the IDIH Application Server. Login as user <b>admusr</b> . Issue the following commands to login as <b>tekelec</b> user.  <code>\$ sudo su - tekelec</code>
<input type="checkbox"/>		

## Procedure 32 Configure DSR Reference Data Synchronization for IDIH (DSR 7.1-Optional)

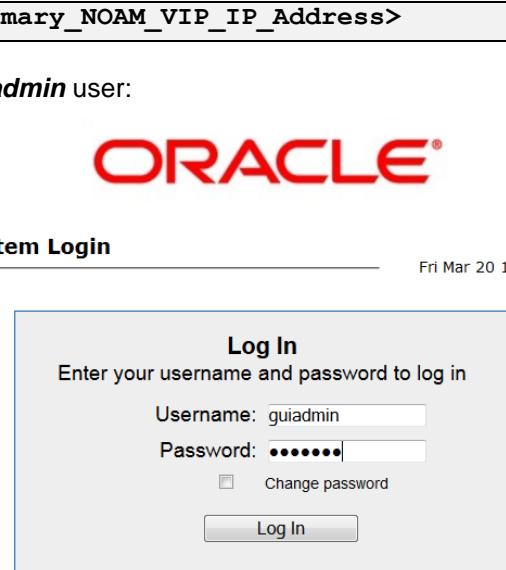
<p>2 <b>IDIH Application Server:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Execute Configuration Script</p>	<p>Execute the following script:</p> <pre>\$ apps/trda-config.sh</pre> <p>Example output:</p> <pre>demo1-app:/usr/TKLC/xIH apps/trda-config.sh dos2unix: converting file /usr/TKLC/xIH/bea/user_projects/domains/tekelec/nsp/trace-refdata- adapter.properties to UNIX format ... Please enter DSR oam server IP address: 10.240.39.175 dos2unix: converting file /usr/TKLC/xIH/bea/user_projects/domains/tekelec/nsp/trace-refdata- adapter.properties to UNIX format ... Buildfile: build.xml  app.disable:  common.weblogic.stop: [echo] [echo] [echo] ===== [echo] application: xihtra [echo] ===== [echo] === stop application EAR [java] weblogic.Deployer invoked with options: -adminurl http://appserver:7001 - userconfigfile /usr/TKLC/xIH/bea/user_projects/domains/tekelec/configfile.secure -userkeyfile /usr/TKLC/xIH/bea/user_projects/domains/tekelec/keyfile.secure -name xIH Trace Reference Data Adapter -stop [java] &lt;Oct 17, 2013 11:35:32 AM EDT&gt; &lt;Info&gt; &lt;J2EE Deployment SPI&gt; &lt;BEA-260121&gt; &lt;Initiating stop operation for application, xIH Trace Reference Data Adapter [archive: null], to configured targets.&gt; [java] Task 4 initiated: [Deployer:149026]stop application xIH Trace Reference Data Adapter on nsp. [java] Task 4 completed: [Deployer:149026]stop application xIH Trace Reference Data Adapter on nsp. [java] Target state: stop completed on Server nsp [java]  BUILD SUCCESSFUL Total time: 1 minute 3 seconds Buildfile: build.xml  app.enable:  common.weblogic.start: [echo] [echo] [echo] ===== [echo] application: xihtra [echo] ===== [echo] === start application EAR [java] weblogic.Deployer invoked with options: -adminurl http://appserver:7001 - userconfigfile /usr/TKLC/xIH/bea/user_projects/domains/tekelec/configfile.secure -userkeyfile /usr/TKLC/xIH/bea/user_projects/domains/tekelec/keyfile.secure -name xIH Trace Reference Data Adapter -start [java] &lt;Oct 17, 2013 11:36:36 AM EDT&gt; &lt;Info&gt; &lt;J2EE Deployment SPI&gt; &lt;BEA-260121&gt; &lt;Initiating start operation for application, xIH Trace Reference Data Adapter [archive: null], to configured targets.&gt; [java] Task 5 initiated: [Deployer:149026]start application xIH Trace Reference Data Adapter on nsp. [java] Task 5 completed: [Deployer:149026]start application xIH Trace Reference Data Adapter on nsp. [java] Target state: start completed on Server nsp [java]  BUILD SUCCESSFUL Total time: 1 minute 3 seconds</pre>
	<p>For prompt “Please enter DSR SOAM server IP address”, enter the VIP of the DSR SOAM and press <b>Enter</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If the address entered is unreachable the script will exit with error “Unable to connect to &lt;ip-address&gt;!”</p>

#### Procedure 32 Configure DSR Reference Data Synchronization for IDIH (DSR 7.1-Optional)

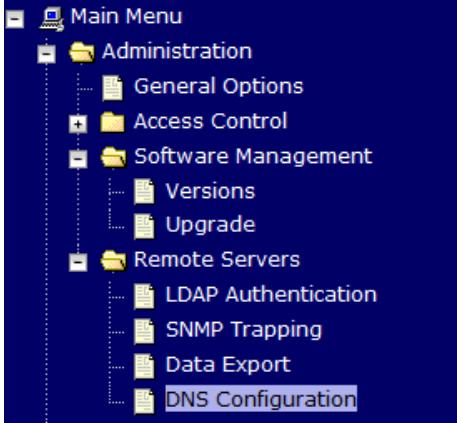
3	<b>IDIH App Server:</b> Monitor Completion	Monitor the log file located at:  <code>/var/TKLC/xIH/log/apps/weblogic/apps/application.log</code>  Examine the log file for entries containing text “ <b>Trace Reference Data Adapter</b> ”
---	-----------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

#### 4.14.2.2 IDIH Configuration: Configuring the SSO Domain

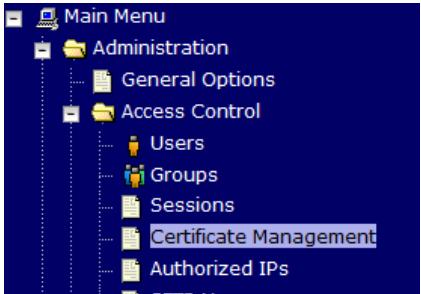
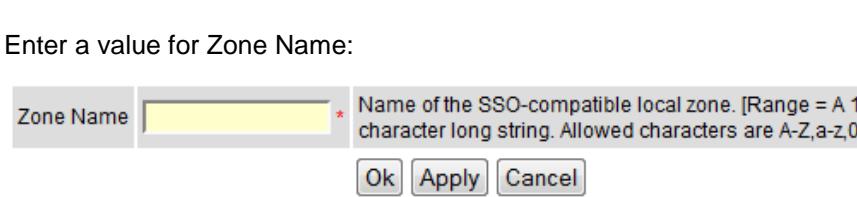
#### Procedure 33 IDIH Configuration: Configuring the SSO Domain (DSR 7.1-Optional)

<b>S</b>	This procedure will provide the steps to configure SSO Domain for IDIH	
<b>T</b>	<b>Note:</b> For DSR 7.0, refer to [25].	
<b>E</b>		
<b>P</b>	# Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.	
	If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.	
1	<b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b>	Establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:  <code>https://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</code>  Login as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:    Welcome to the Oracle System Login. Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0, 9.0, or 10.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies. Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

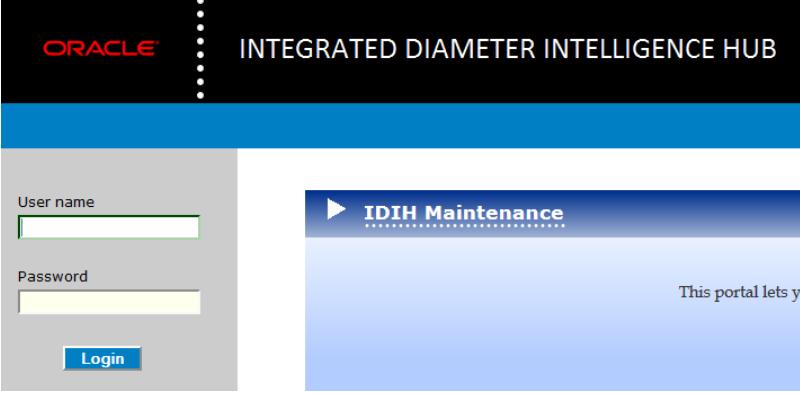
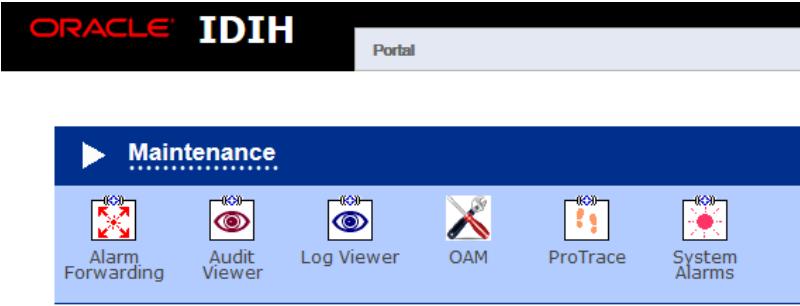
### Procedure 33 IDIH Configuration: Configuring the SSO Domain (DSR 7.1-Optional)

2	<p><input type="checkbox"/> NOAM VIP GUI: Configure DNS</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu</b> -&gt; <b>Administration</b> -&gt; <b>Remote Servers</b> -&gt; <b>DNS Configuration</b></p>  <p>Configure values for the following fields:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Domain Name</li><li>• Name Server</li><li>• Search Domain 1</li></ul> <p><b>System Domain</b></p> <table border="1"><thead><tr><th></th><th>Domain Name</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>Domain</td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr></tbody></table> <p><b>External DNS Name Server</b></p> <table border="1"><thead><tr><th></th><th>Address</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>Name Server</td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr></tbody></table> <p><b>Domain Search Order</b></p> <table border="1"><thead><tr><th></th><th>Domain Name</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>Search Domain 1</td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr></tbody></table> <p>If values have already been configured, select the <b>Cancel</b> button; otherwise configure the above values and select the <b>Ok</b> button.</p> <p><b>Ok</b> <b>Cancel</b></p>		Domain Name	Domain	<input type="text"/>		Address	Name Server	<input type="text"/>		Domain Name	Search Domain 1	<input type="text"/>
	Domain Name													
Domain	<input type="text"/>													
	Address													
Name Server	<input type="text"/>													
	Domain Name													
Search Domain 1	<input type="text"/>													

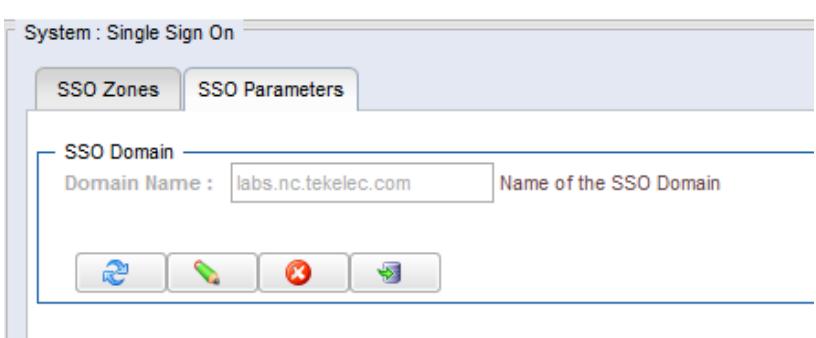
### Procedure 33 IDIH Configuration: Configuring the SSO Domain (DSR 7.1-Optional)

3	<b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Establish SSO Local Zone	Navigate to Main Menu -> Access Control -> Certification Management 
		Select the <b>Establish SSO Zone</b> button
		
		Enter a value for Zone Name:
		
		Select the <b>Ok</b> button.
		Information for the new Certificate type of SSO Local is now displayed.
		Select the <b>Report</b> button.
		
		The Certificate Report is displayed. Select and copy the encoded certificate text to the clipboard for future access.
		Example of Certificate report:
		<pre>-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----  MIICKzCCAdWgAwIBAgIJA0VfSLNc3CeJMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBCwUAMHExCzAJBgNV  BAYTA1VTMQswCQYDVQQIDAjQzEQMA4GA1UEBwwHUmsZWlnaDEPMA0GA1UECgwG  T3JhY2x1MQswCQYDVQQLDajQvjeQMA4GA1UEAwwHTGlizXJ0eTETMBEGCSqGSIB3  DQEJARYEdGVzdDAeFw0xNTA1MDQxNDIzNTRaFw0xNjA1MDMxNDIzNTRaMHExCzAJ  BgNVBAYTA1VTMQswCQYDVQQIDAjQzEQMA4GA1UEBwwHUmsZWlnaDEPMA0GA1UE  CgwGT3JhY2x1MQswCQYDVQQLDajQvjeQMA4GA1UEAwwHTGlizXJ0eTETMBEGCSqGSIB3  DQEJARYEdGVzdDBcMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUA0sAMEGCQQCZ/MpkhlvMP/iJ  s5xD02MwxJm3jYim43H8gR9pfBTMNP6L9k1uJYi+2T0hngJFQlpIn6SK6pXnuAGY  f/vDWFqPAgMBAAGjUDBOMB0GA1UdDgQWBBs6IzIOLP1gizQ6+BERr8Fo2XyDVDAF  BgNVHSMEGDAwgbS6IzIOLP1gizQ6+BERr8Fo2XyDVDAFBgNVHRMEBTADAQH/MA0G  CSqGSIB3DQEBCwUAA0EAowIqBMEQyvfvt38r/yfgIx3w5dN8SBwHjHC5TpJrHV6U  zFlg5dfzoLz7ditjGOhWJ919VRw39LQ81KFp7SMXwA==  -----END CERTIFICATE-----</pre>

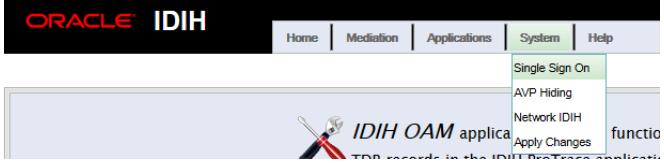
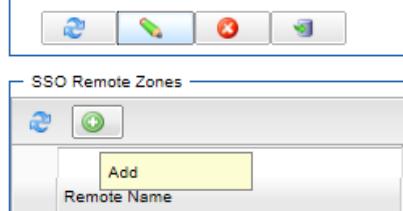
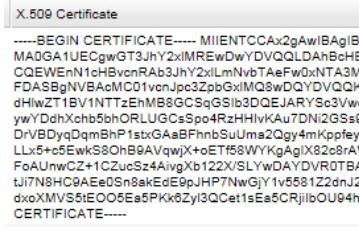
### Procedure 33 IDIH Configuration: Configuring the SSO Domain (DSR 7.1-Optional)

4	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>IDIH Application Server GUI:</b> Login	<p>Establish a GUI session on the IDIH app server:</p> <p>Login as the <b><i>idihadmin</i></b> user:</p> 
5	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>IDIH Application Server GUI:</b> Launch the OAM portal	<p>Navigate to the OAM portal Icon to Launch the OAM web application:</p> 

### Procedure 33 IDIH Configuration: Configuring the SSO Domain (DSR 7.1-Optional)

6	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>IDIH Application Server GUI:</b> Configure the SSO Domain</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>System -&gt; Single Sign on</b></p> <p></p> <p>Select the <b>SSO Parameters Tab</b></p> <p></p> <p>Select the <b>Edit Value</b> icon button</p> <p></p> <p>Enter a value for the Domain Name.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This should be the same domain name assigned in the DSR NOAM DNS Configuration (<b>Step 2</b>)</p> <p>Select the <b>Save</b> icon button.</p> <p></p> <p>Select the <b>Refresh</b> icon button to display data saved for the Remote Zone.</p> <p></p>
---	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### Procedure 33 IDIH Configuration: Configuring the SSO Domain (DSR 7.1-Optional)

<p>7 <input type="checkbox"/> <b>DIH Application Server GUI:</b> Configure the SSO Remote Zone</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>System -&gt; Single Sign on</b></p>  <p>Select the <b>SSO Zones Tab</b></p>  <p>Select the <b>Add icon button</b></p>  <p>Enter a value for field <b>Remote Name</b></p>  <p>For field <b>X.509 Certificate</b>, paste the encoded certificate text from the clipboard that was previously copied from the DSR NOAM.</p>  <p>Select the <b>save icon</b></p>  <p>Select the <b>Refresh icon</b> to display the data saved for remote zone.</p> 
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

#### 4.14.2.3 IDIH Configuration: Configuring IDIH in the DSR

##### Procedure 34 IDIH Configuration: Configure IDIH in the DSR (DSR 7.1-Optional)

<b>S</b>	This procedure will provide the steps to complete the IDIH integration on the DSR.
<b>T</b>	<b>Note:</b> For DSR 7.0, refer to [25].
<b>E</b>	
<b>P</b>	
<b>#</b>	Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.
If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p> <p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto; text-align: center;"><b>https://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</b></div> <p>Login as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p>

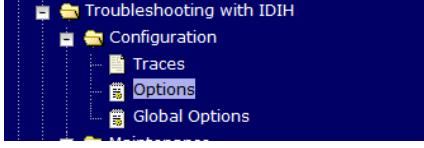
#### Procedure 34 IDIH Configuration: Configure IDIH in the DSR (DSR 7.1-Optional)

2	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Configure CommAgent Connection</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Communication Agent -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Remote Servers</b></p>  <p>Select the <b>Insert</b> button</p>  <p>Add the IDIH Mediation Server</p> <p>For the Remote Server IP address field, enter the IMI IP address of the IDIH Mediation Server.</p> <table border="1"><thead><tr><th>Field</th><th>Value</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>Remote Server Name</td><td><input type="text"/> *</td></tr><tr><td>Remote Server IPv4 IP Address</td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr><tr><td>Remote Server IPv6 IP Address</td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr><tr><td>Remote Server Mode</td><td><input type="button" value="-- Select --"/> *</td></tr><tr><td>IP Address Preference</td><td><input type="button" value="ComAgent Network Preference"/></td></tr></tbody></table> <p>Set the Remote Server Mode to <b>Server</b></p>	Field	Value	Remote Server Name	<input type="text"/> *	Remote Server IPv4 IP Address	<input type="text"/>	Remote Server IPv6 IP Address	<input type="text"/>	Remote Server Mode	<input type="button" value="-- Select --"/> *	IP Address Preference	<input type="button" value="ComAgent Network Preference"/>
Field	Value													
Remote Server Name	<input type="text"/> *													
Remote Server IPv4 IP Address	<input type="text"/>													
Remote Server IPv6 IP Address	<input type="text"/>													
Remote Server Mode	<input type="button" value="-- Select --"/> *													
IP Address Preference	<input type="button" value="ComAgent Network Preference"/>													

#### Procedure 34 IDIH Configuration: Configure IDIH in the DSR (DSR 7.1-Optional)

3	<b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Login	<p>Establish a GUI session on the SOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the SOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <p><b>https://&lt;Primary_SOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</b></p> <p>Login as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p>
---	----------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

#### Procedure 34 IDIH Configuration: Configure IDIH in the DSR (DSR 7.1-Optional)

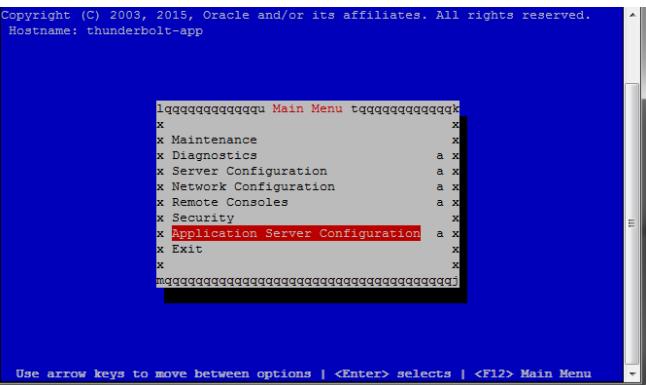
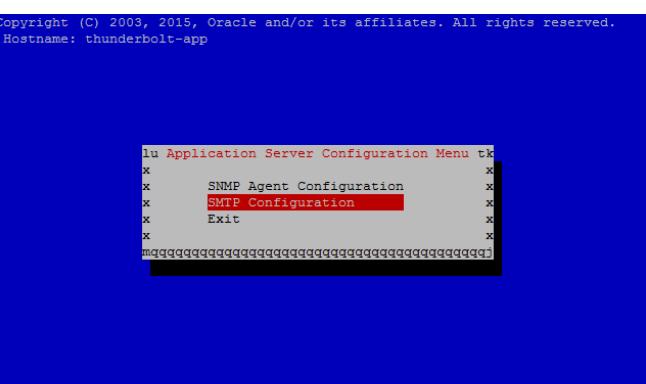
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Configure IDIH Hostname	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Diameter -&gt; Troubleshooting with IDIH -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Options</b></p>  <p>Enter the fully qualified IDIH host name in the <b>IDIH Visualization Address</b> field:</p> <p><b>Main Menu: Diameter -&gt; Troubleshooting with IDIH -&gt; Configuration -&gt; Options</b></p> <p><b>IDIH Configuration</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field</th><th>Value</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Max bandwidth</td><td>25 *</td><td>Maximum amount of bandwidth specified in Mbps that is used for sending TTRs. If the bandwidth required exceeds the configured maximum, Node will discard TTRs so that the bandwidth required does not exceed the configured maximum. [Default = 25Mbps (26214400 bps); Range = 0-25]</td></tr> <tr> <td>IDIH Host Name</td><td>-Select-</td><td>The Host Name of the peer IDIH server used for sending the messages. [Default = n/a].</td></tr> <tr> <td>IDIH Visualization address</td><td>100.65.135.179</td><td>The IP address or FQDN of the remote IDIH server that visualizes the "Maintenance" screen. If an IP address is used in place of a FQDN then IDIH SSO function [Default=n/a].</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Click the <b>Apply</b> button</b></p>	Field	Value	Description	Max bandwidth	25 *	Maximum amount of bandwidth specified in Mbps that is used for sending TTRs. If the bandwidth required exceeds the configured maximum, Node will discard TTRs so that the bandwidth required does not exceed the configured maximum. [Default = 25Mbps (26214400 bps); Range = 0-25]	IDIH Host Name	-Select-	The Host Name of the peer IDIH server used for sending the messages. [Default = n/a].	IDIH Visualization address	100.65.135.179	The IP address or FQDN of the remote IDIH server that visualizes the "Maintenance" screen. If an IP address is used in place of a FQDN then IDIH SSO function [Default=n/a].
Field	Value	Description												
Max bandwidth	25 *	Maximum amount of bandwidth specified in Mbps that is used for sending TTRs. If the bandwidth required exceeds the configured maximum, Node will discard TTRs so that the bandwidth required does not exceed the configured maximum. [Default = 25Mbps (26214400 bps); Range = 0-25]												
IDIH Host Name	-Select-	The Host Name of the peer IDIH server used for sending the messages. [Default = n/a].												
IDIH Visualization address	100.65.135.179	The IP address or FQDN of the remote IDIH server that visualizes the "Maintenance" screen. If an IP address is used in place of a FQDN then IDIH SSO function [Default=n/a].												

#### 4.14.2.4 IDIH Configuration: Configuring Mail Server (Optional)

##### Procedure 35 IDIH Configuration: Configure Mail Server-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional)

<b>S</b> <b>T</b> <b>E</b> <b>P</b> <b>#</b>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the SMTP mail server.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This procedure is optional; however, this option is required for Security (password initialization set to AUTOMATIC) and Forwarding (forwarding by mail filter defined) and is available only on the Application server.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> For DSR 7.0, refer to [25].</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>IDIH Application Server: Login</b>	<p>Establish an SSH session to the IDIH Application Server, login as <b>admusr</b>.</p>

## Procedure 35 IDIH Configuration: Configure Mail Server-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional)

2	<b>IDIH Application Server:</b> Configure the Authenticated Mail Server	Enter the platcfg menu, execute the following command: <b>\$ sudo su - platcfg</b>  <b>Select Application Server Configuration</b>   <b>Select SMTP Configuration</b>   <b>Select Edit</b> Enter the following parameters: <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Mail Server IP Address</li><li>2. User</li><li>3. Password</li><li>4. Email Address (From)</li><li>5. Mail smtp timeout</li><li>6. Mail smtp connectiontimeout</li><li>7. SNMP over SSL used?</li></ol> Select <b>OK</b> Select <b>Exit</b> to exit the platcfg menu
---	----------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

#### 4.14.2.5 IDIH Configuration: SNMP Management Server (Optional)

##### Procedure 36 IDIH Configuration: Configure SNMP Management Server-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional)

S	This procedure will provide the steps to configure the SNMP management server.	
T	<b>Note:</b> This procedure is optional; however, this option is required for Forwarding (forwarding by SNMP filter defined) and is available only on the application server.	
E	<b>Note:</b> For DSR 7.0, refer to [25].	
P	1	IDIH Application Server: Login
#		Establish an SSH session to the IDIH Application Server, login as <b>admusr</b> .

## Procedure 36 IDIH Configuration: Configure SNMP Management Server-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional)

#### 4.14.2.6 IDIH Configuration: Change Network Interface (Optional)

##### Procedure 37 IDIH Configuration: Change Network Interface-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional)

S	This procedure will provide the steps to change the default network interface	
T		
E	<b>Note:</b> Initially the default network interface used to transport TTRs from DSR to DIH uses the internal imi network; however, this can be changed if required. It should be noted that changing this interface could degrade performance of TTR transmission.	
P		
#	<b>Note:</b> A script is provided to manage the settings so that the operator doesn't need to know the details required to apply the settings. There are two settings 'interface.name' and 'interface.enabled'.	
	When <code>interface.enabled=True</code> then communications over the 'interface.name =value', where value is the name of the network interface as defined on the platform, is the only specified interface that is used for communications.	
	When 'interface.enabled=False' then communications over the named interface is not enforced, that is, all interfaces configured on the platform are allowed to be used for communications.	
	For example, if it is required to use the xmi interface for communication instead of the default internal imi interface, then the operator would supply 'xmi' when prompted for the interface name and 'True' when prompted if interface filtering should be applied.	
	<b>Note:</b> For DSR 7.0, refer to [25].	
	Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.	
	If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.	
1	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>IDIH Mediation Server:</b> Login	Establish an SSH session to the IDIH Mediation Server. Login as user <b>admusr</b> .  Issue the following commands to login as <b>tekelec</b> user.  <code>\$ sudo su - tekelec</code>

### Procedure 37 IDIH Configuration: Change Network Interface-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional)

<p>2 <input type="checkbox"/> <b>IDIH Mediation Server:</b> Execute the Change Interface Script</p>	<p>Execute the change interface script with the following command:</p> <pre>\$ chgIntf.sh</pre> <p>Answer the following questions during execution of the script:</p> <p>This script is used to change the interface name (default = imi) used for mediation communications and whether to enable network interface filtering or not. Please answer the following questions or enter CTR-L-C to exit out of the script.</p> <p>Current setting are: interface.name=imi interface.enabled=True</p> <p>Enter new network interface name, return to keep current [imi]: <b>xmi</b></p> <p>Do you want to enable network interface filtering [True False], return to keep current [True]:</p> <p>Updating configuration properties file with 'interface.name=xmi' and 'interface.enabled=True', and restarting mediation configuration bundle...</p>
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### 4.14.2.7 IDIH Configuration: Generate Disaster Recovery FDC File (Optional)

#### Procedure 38 IDIH Configuration: Backup the upgrade and Disaster Recovery FDC File-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional)

<p><b>S</b> <b>T</b> <b>E</b> <b>P</b> <b>#</b></p>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to generate a disaster recovery fdc file.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> For DSR 7.0, refer to [25].</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
<p>1 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>Identify Backup Server</b></p>	<p>Identify an external server to be used as a backup server for the following steps. The server should not be co-located with any of the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TVOE</li> <li>• PMAC</li> <li>• DSR NOAM</li> <li>• DSR SOAM</li> </ul>
<p>2 <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p><b>PMAC:</b> Establish Terminal Session</p>	<p>Establish an SSH session to the PMAC. Login as <b>admusr</b>.</p>

### Procedure 38 IDIH Configuration: Backup the upgrade and Disaster Recovery FDC File-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional)

3	<b>PMAC:</b> Verify Upgrade fdc file exists	<p>Execute the following commands to verify the upgrade FDC file for IDIH exists:</p> <pre>\$ cd /var/TKLC/smac/guest-dropin \$ ls -l *.xml</pre> <p>The following output is expected:</p> <pre>-rw-r----- 1 root smac 9542 May 11 09:43 &lt;idih_install&gt;.xml -rw-r----- 1 root smac 5107 May 11 09:43 &lt;idih_upgrade&gt;.xml</pre> <p><b>Note:</b> The &lt;idih_upgrade&gt;.xml file is the same file used for upgrade and disaster recovery procedures.</p>
4	<b>PMAC:</b> Transfer the FDC file to a remote server.	<p>Login to the backup server identified in <b>step 1</b> and copy backup image to the customer server where it can be safely stored. If the customer system is a Linux system, please execute the following command to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p> <pre>\$ sudo scp admusr@&lt;PMAC_IP_Address&gt;:/var/TKLC/smac/guest-dropin/&lt;idih_upgrade.xml&gt; /path/to/destination/</pre> <p>When prompted, enter the admusr user password and press <b>Enter</b>.</p> <p>If the Customer System is a Windows system please refer to reference [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1) Using WinSCP to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p>

## 4.15 Post-Install Activities

### Procedure 39 Activate Optional Features

<b>S</b> <b>T</b> <b>E</b> <b>P</b> <b>#</b>	<p>This procedure will provide instruction on how to install DSR optional components once regular installation is complete.</p> <p><b>Prerequisite:</b> All previous DSR installation steps have been completed.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
----------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### Procedure 39 Activate Optional Features

1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Refer to Activation Guides for Optional Features</b>	Refer to <b>3.2 Optional</b> Features for a list of feature activation documents whose procedures are to be executed at this moment.
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Multi-Site Feature Activation (DSR 7.0 Only)</b>	To activate optional features in multi-site configurations for DR-NOAM and/or Spare SOAM servers, follow <b>Appendix K: Multi-Site Feature Activation (DSR 7.0)</b> .  <b>Note:</b> If the following configuration conditions apply, execute this step, otherwise skip this step: <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1) DR-NOAM configurations (If <b>Procedure 14</b> was executed)</li><li>2) Spare SOAM configurations where the preferred spare was inserted into the server group BEFORE the active/Standby SOAM servers.</li></ol>

#### Procedure 40 Configure ComAgent Connections

<b>S</b>	This procedure will provide instruction on how to configure ComAgent connections on DSR for use in the FABR application.	
<b>T</b>	<b>Prerequisite:</b> FABR application is activated.	
<b>E</b>	Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.	
<b>P</b>	If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.	
<b>#</b>		
1	<b>Configure ComAgent</b>	Refer to [11] for the steps required to configure <b>ComAgent</b>
<input type="checkbox"/>		

#### Procedure 41 Backup TVOE Configuration

<b>S</b>	This procedure will provide instruction on how to back up each TVOE rack mount server or Blade server after a successful installation.	
<b>T</b>	Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.	
<b>E</b>	If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.	
<b>P</b>		
<b>#</b>		
1	<b>Identify Backup Server</b>	Identify an external server to be used as a backup server for the following steps. The server should not be co-located with any of the following items: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• TVOE</li><li>• PMAC</li><li>• DSR NOAM</li><li>• DSR SOAM</li></ul>
<input type="checkbox"/>		
2	<b>TVOE Server: Login</b>	Establish an SSH session to the TVOE host server, login as <b>admusr</b> .
<input type="checkbox"/>		

#### Procedure 41 Backup TVOE Configuration

3	<p><b>TVOE Server:</b> Build ISO backup file</p> <p>Execute the following command from the TVOE server:</p> <div><pre>\$ sudo su - platcfg  lqqqqqq Main Menu tqqqqqqqk x x Maintenance x x Diagnostics x x Server Configuration a x x Security a x x Network Configuration a x x Exit x x mqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqj</pre></div> <p>Select the following menu options sequentially: <b>Maintenance -&gt; Backup and Restore -&gt;Backup Platform (CD/DVD).</b> The “<b>Backup TekServer Menu</b>” page will now be shown.</p> <p>Build the backup ISO image by selecting: Build ISO file only</p> <div><pre>lqqqqu Backup TekServer Menu tqqqqqk x x Select Backup Type (plat-app) x x View Index Table of Contents a x x Select Backup Device () a x x Select Backup Media (CD-R) a x x Build ISO file only x x Test Backup a x x Backup a x x Exit x x mqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqj</pre></div> <p><b>Note:</b> Creating the ISO image may happen so quickly that this screen may only appear for an instant.</p> <p>After the ISO is created, platcfg will return to the Backup TekServer Menu. The ISO has now been created and is located in the /var/TKLC/bkp/ directory. An example filename of a backup file that was created is: "hostname1307466752-plat-app-201104171705.iso"</p> <p>Exit out of platcfg by selecting <b>Exit</b>.</p>
---	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

#### Procedure 41 Backup TVOE Configuration

4	<b>Backup Server:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Transfer TVOE Files to Backup Server	<p>Login to the backup server identified in <b>step 1</b> and copy backup image to the customer server where it can be safely stored. If the customer system is a Linux system, please execute the following command to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$ sudo scp twoexfer@&lt;TVOE IP Address&gt;:backup/* /path/to/destination/</pre> </div>
		<p>When prompted, enter the twoexfer user password and press <b>Enter</b>.</p> <p>If the Customer System is a Windows system please refer to reference [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1) Using WinSCP to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p> <p>The TVOE backup file has now been successfully placed on the backup server.</p>
5	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Repeat for Additional TVOE Servers</b>	<p>Repeat steps <b>3-4</b> for additional TVOE servers</p>

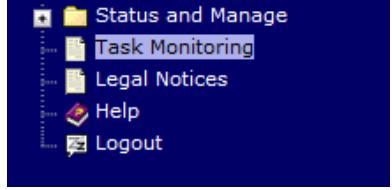
#### Procedure 42 Backup PMAC Application

<b>S</b> <b>T</b> <b>E</b> <b>P</b> <b>#</b>		<p>This procedure will provide instruction on how to back up each PMAC application installed in this procedure.</p>
		<p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p>
		<p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
1	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Identify Backup Server</b>	<p>Identify an external server to be used as a backup server for the following steps. The server should not be co-located with any of the following items:</p>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TVOE</li> <li>• PMAC</li> <li>• DSR NOAM</li> <li>• DSR SOAM</li> </ul>
2	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>PMAC Server: Login</b>	<p>Establish an SSH session to the PMAC server, login as <b>admusr</b>.</p>

## Procedure 42 Backup PMAC Application

3	<b>PMAC Server:</b> Build backup File	<p>Execute the following command from the PMAC server:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/smac/bin/pmacadm backup</pre> <p>PM&amp;C backup been successfully initiated as task ID 7</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The backup runs as a background task. To check the status of the background task use the PMAC GUI Task Monitor page:</p> <p>or issue the command "<b>pmaccli getBgTasks</b>". The result should eventually be "PMAC Backup successful" and the background task should indicate "COMPLETE".</p>
4	<b>PMAC GUI:</b> Login	<p>Open web browser and enter:</p> <pre>http://&lt;PMAC Mgmt Network IP&gt;</pre> <p>Login as <b>pmacadmin</b> user:</p> 

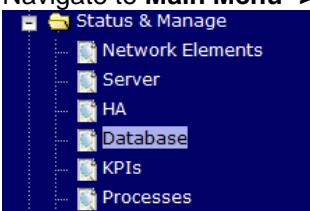
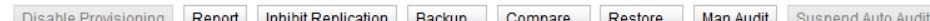
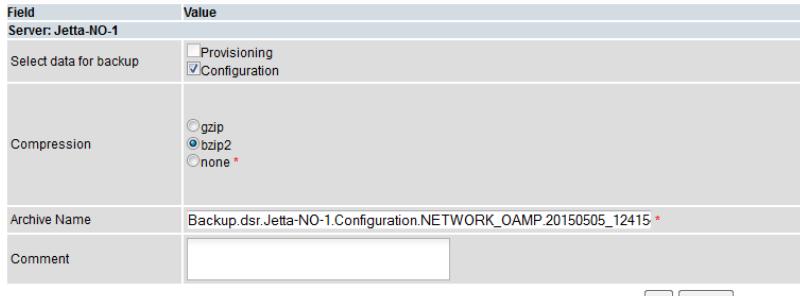
## Procedure 42 Backup PMAC Application

5	<b>PMAC Server GUI:</b>	Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Task Monitoring</b>																								
<input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Monitor/Verify Backup Task Completion</b>	 <p>Monitor the Backup PM&amp;C Task:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="6">Background Task Monitoring</th> </tr> <tr> <th colspan="6"> <input style="width: 100px; height: 20px; float: left; margin-right: 10px;" type="button" value="Filter"/> </th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>ID</th> <th>Task</th> <th>Target</th> <th>Status</th> <th>State</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td></td> <td>181</td> <td>Backup PM&amp;C</td> <td></td> <td>PM&amp;C Backup successful</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Note:</b> Alternatively, you can monitor the Backup task by executing the following command:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$ sudo pmaccli getBgTasks</pre> </div>	Background Task Monitoring						<input style="width: 100px; height: 20px; float: left; margin-right: 10px;" type="button" value="Filter"/>							ID	Task	Target	Status	State		181	Backup PM&C		PM&C Backup successful	COMPLETE
Background Task Monitoring																										
<input style="width: 100px; height: 20px; float: left; margin-right: 10px;" type="button" value="Filter"/>																										
	ID	Task	Target	Status	State																					
	181	Backup PM&C		PM&C Backup successful	COMPLETE																					
<input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Backup Server:</b> Transfer PMAC File to Backup Server	<p>Login to the backup server identified in <b>step 1</b> and copy backup image to the customer server where it can be safely stored. If the customer system is a Linux system, please execute the following command to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$ sudo scp admusr@&lt;PMAC_IP_Address&gt;:/var/TKLC/smac/backup/* /path/to/destination/</pre> </div> <p>When prompted, enter the admusr user password and press <b>Enter</b>.</p> <p>If the Customer System is a Windows system please refer to reference [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1) Using WinSCP to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p>																								
<input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Repeat for Additional TVOE Servers</b>	Repeat <b>steps 2-6</b> for additional TVOE servers																								

## Procedure 43 NOAM Database Backup

<b>S</b> <b>T</b> <b>E</b> <b>P</b> <b>#</b>	<p>This procedure will provide instruction on how to back up the NOAM Database.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
<b>1</b> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>Identify Backup Server</b></p> <p>Identify an external server to be used as a backup server for the following steps. The server should not be co-located with any of the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TVOE</li> <li>• PMAC</li> <li>• DSR NOAM</li> <li>• DSR SOAM</li> </ul>
<b>2</b> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</b></p> <p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;"> <b><a href="http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;">http://&lt;Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</a></b> </div> <p>Login as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin: 10px auto; width: fit-content;"> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Oracle System Login</b></p> <p style="text-align: right;">Fri Mar 20 12:29:52 2015 EDT</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px; text-align: center;"> <p><b>Log In</b></p> <p>Enter your username and password to log in</p> <p>Username: <input type="text" value="guiadmin"/></p> <p>Password: <input type="password" value="*****"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Change password</p> <p><b>Log In</b></p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;">Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0, 9.0, or 10.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><small>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</small></p> </div>

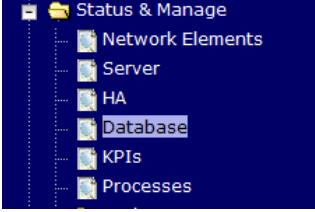
#### Procedure 43 NOAM Database Backup

4	<b>NOAM VIP GUI:</b> Perform Database Backup	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Status &amp; Manage -&gt; Database</b></p>  <p>Select the Active NOAM</p> <p>Select the <b>Backup</b> Button:</p>  <p>Select the desired file compression method</p>  <p>Set the archive file name if needed.</p> <p>Select <b>OK</b></p>
6	<b>Backup Server:</b> Transfer PMAC File to Backup Server	<p>Login to the backup server identified in <b>step 1</b> and copy backup image to the customer server where it can be safely stored. If the customer system is a Linux system, please execute the following command to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$ sudo scp admusr@&lt;NOAM VIP&gt;:/var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/backup/* /path/to/destination/</pre> </div> <p>When prompted, enter the admusr user password and press <b>Enter</b>.</p> <p>If the Customer System is a Windows system please refer to reference [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1) Using WinSCP to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p>

#### Procedure 44 SOAM Database Backup

<b>S</b> <b>T</b> <b>E</b> <b>P</b> <b>#</b>	<p>This procedure will provide instruction on how to back up the SOAM Database.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Identify Backup Server</b>	<p>Identify an external server to be used as a backup server for the following steps. The server should not be co-located with any of the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TVOE</li> <li>• PMAC</li> <li>• DSR NOAM</li> <li>• DSR SOAM</li> </ul>
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>SOAM VIP GUI: Login</b>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the SOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the SOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;"> <b><a href="http://&lt;Primary_SOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;">http://&lt;Primary_SOAM_VIP_IP_Address&gt;</a></b> </div> <p>Login as the <b>guiadmin</b> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin: 10px auto; width: fit-content;"> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Oracle System Login</b></p> <p style="text-align: right;">Fri Mar 20 12:29:52 2015 EDT</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px; text-align: center; margin: 10px auto; width: fit-content;"> <p><b>Log In</b></p> <p>Enter your username and password to log in</p> <p>Username: <input type="text" value="guiadmin"/></p> <p>Password: <input type="password" value="*****"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Change password</p> <p><b>Log In</b></p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;">Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0, 9.0, or 10.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><small>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</small></p> </div>

#### Procedure 44 SOAM Database Backup

4	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>SOAM VIP GUI:</b> Perform Database Backup</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; Status &amp; Manage -&gt; Database</b></p>  <p>Select the Active SOAM</p> <p>Select the <b>Backup</b> Button:</p> <p>Disable Provisioning Report Inhibit Replication Backup... Compare... Restore... Man Audit Suspend Auto Audit</p> <p>Select the desired file compression method</p> <p><b>Database Backup</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field</th><th>Value</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Server: Jetta-NO-1</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Select data for backup</td><td><input type="checkbox"/> Provisioning <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Configuration</td></tr> <tr> <td>Compression</td><td><input type="radio"/> gzip <input checked="" type="radio"/> bzip2 <input type="radio"/> none *</td></tr> <tr> <td>Archive Name</td><td>Backup.dsr.Jetta-NO-1.Configuration.NETWORK_OAMP.20150505_12415.*</td></tr> <tr> <td>Comment</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Ok Cancel</p> <p>Set the archive file name if needed.</p> <p>Select <b>OK</b></p>	Field	Value	Server: Jetta-NO-1		Select data for backup	<input type="checkbox"/> Provisioning <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Configuration	Compression	<input type="radio"/> gzip <input checked="" type="radio"/> bzip2 <input type="radio"/> none *	Archive Name	Backup.dsr.Jetta-NO-1.Configuration.NETWORK_OAMP.20150505_12415.*	Comment	
Field	Value													
Server: Jetta-NO-1														
Select data for backup	<input type="checkbox"/> Provisioning <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Configuration													
Compression	<input type="radio"/> gzip <input checked="" type="radio"/> bzip2 <input type="radio"/> none *													
Archive Name	Backup.dsr.Jetta-NO-1.Configuration.NETWORK_OAMP.20150505_12415.*													
Comment														
6	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Backup Server:</b> Transfer PMAC File to Backup Server</p>	<p>Login to the backup server identified in <b>step 1</b> and copy backup image to the customer server where it can be safely stored. If the customer system is a Linux system, please execute the following command to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p> <pre>\$ sudo scp admusr@&lt;SOAM VIP&gt;:/var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/backup/* /path/to/destination/</pre> <p>When prompted, enter the admusr user password and press <b>Enter</b>.</p> <p>If the Customer System is a Windows system please refer to reference [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1) Using WinSCP to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p>												

#### Procedure 44 SOAM Database Backup

6	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Repeat for Additional TVOE Servers</b>	Repeat <b>steps 2-6</b> for additional SOAM Sites
---	--------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------



**DSR 7.1 Only:** Before configuring Diameter connections (SCTP Only), please refer to

## **Appendix N: Disable/Enable DTLS**

## Appendix A: Sample Network Element and Hardware Profiles

In order to enter all the network information for a network element, a specially formatted XML file needs to be filled out with the required network information. The network information is needed to configure both the NOAM and any SOAM Network Elements.

It is expected that the maintainer/creator of this file has networking knowledge of this product and the customer site at which it is being installed. This network element XML file is used for DSR deployments using Cisco 4948 switches and HP c-Class blade servers. The following is an example of a Network Element XML file.

The SOAM Network Element XML file needs to have same network names for the networks as the NOAMP Network Element XML file has. It is easy to accidentally create different network names for NOAMP and SOAM Network Element, and then the mapping of services to networks will not be possible.

**Figure 5 Example Network Element XML File**

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<networkelement>
<name>NE</name>
<networks>
<network>
<name>INTERNALXMI</name>
<vlanId>3</vlanId>
<ip>10.2.0.0</ip>
<mask>255.255.255.0</mask>
<gateway>10.2.0.1</gateway>
<isDefault>true</isDefault>
</network>
<network>
<name>INTERNALIMI</name>
<vlanId>4</vlanId>
<ip>10.3.0.0</ip>
<mask>255.255.255.0</mask>
<nonRoutable>true</nonRoutable>
</network>
</networks>
</networkelement>
```

**'nonRoutable' Field:** By defining a network as 'nonRoutable' as seen above for INTERNALIMI, this means that the network shall not be routable outside the layer 3 boundary. This allows the user to define the same IP range in each SOAM site, and no duplicate IP check will be performed during server creation.

The server hardware information is needed to configure the Ethernet interfaces on the servers. This server hardware profile data XML file is used for DSR deployments using HP c-Class blade servers and HP c-Class rack-mount servers. It is supplied to the NOAM server so that the information can be pulled in and presented to the user in the GUI during server configuration. The following is an example of a Server Hardware Profile XML file.

**Figure 6 Example Server Hardware Profile XML-HP c-Class Blade**

```
<profile>
<serverType>HP c-Class Blade</serverType>
<available>
<device>bond0</device>
</available>
<devices>
<device>
<name>bond0</name>
<type>BONDING</type>
<createBond>true</createBond>
<slaves>
<slave>eth01</slave>
<slave>eth02</slave>
</slaves>
<option>
<monitoring>mii</monitoring>
<interval>100</interval>
<upstream_delay>200</upstream_delay>
<downstream_delay>200</downstream_delay>
</option>
</device>
</devices>
</profile>
```

Figure 7 Example Server Hardware Profile XML- Virtual Guest on TVOE

```
<profile>
<serverType>TVOE Guest</serverType>
<available>
<device>Management</device>
<device>Control</device>
<device>xmi</device>
<device>imi</device>
<device>xsi</device>
</available>
<devices>
<device>
<name>management</name>
<type>ETHERNET</type>
</device>
<device>
<name>control</name>
<type>ETHERNET</type>
</device>
<device>
<name>xmi</name>
<type>ETHERNET</type>
</device>
<device>
<name>imi</name>
<type>ETHERNET</type>
</device>
<device>
<name>xsi</name>
<type>ETHERNET</type>
</device>
</devices>
</profile>
```

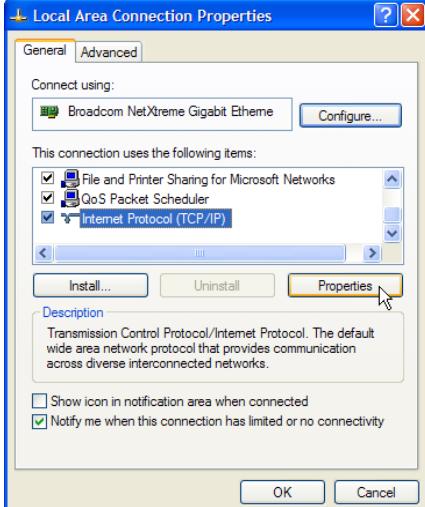
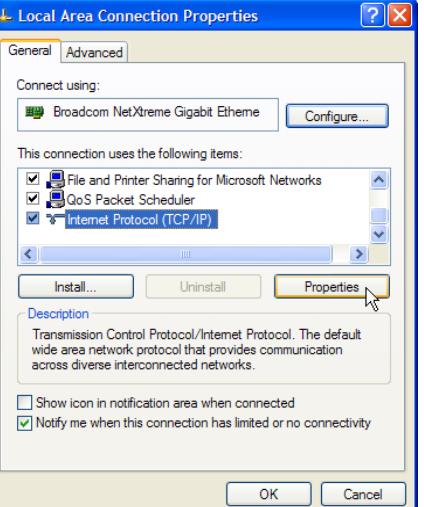
## Appendix B: Configuring for TVOE iLO Access

### Appendix B 1 Connecting to the TVOE iLO

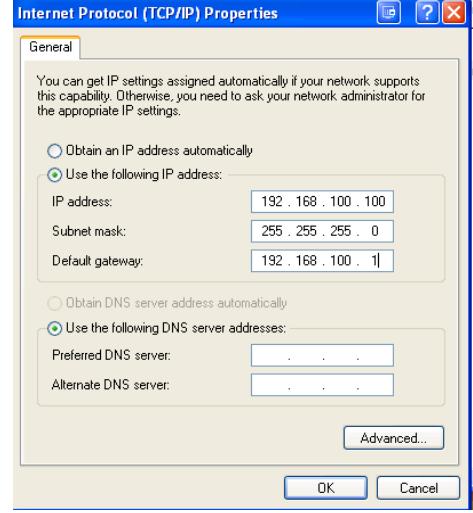
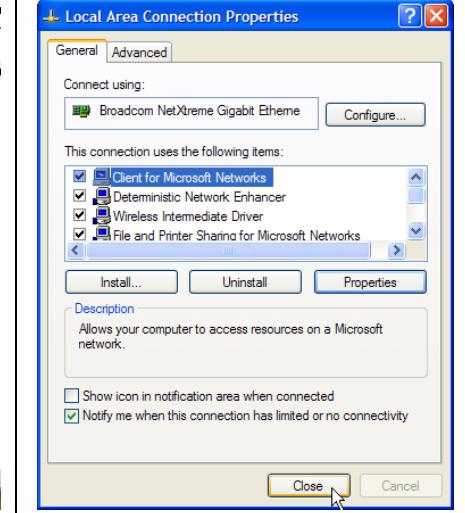
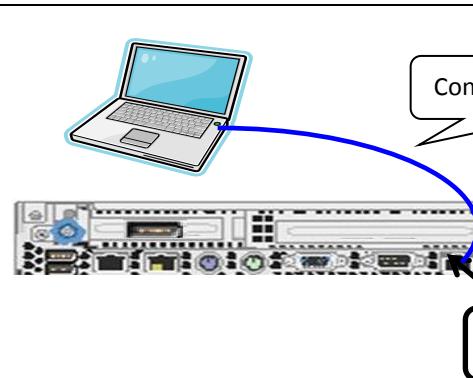
This procedure contains the steps to connect a laptop to the TVOE iLO via a directly cabled Ethernet connection.

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

If this procedure fails, contact **Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)**, and ask for assistance.

STEP #	Procedure	Result	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Access the laptop network interface cards TCP/IP <b>Properties</b> screen.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> For this step follow the instruction specific to the laptop's OS (XP or 7).</p>	<p><b>Windows XP</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Go to <b>Control Panel</b></li><li>• Double-click on <b>Network Connections</b></li><li>• Right-click the wired Ethernet Interface icon and select <b>Properties</b></li><li>• Select <b>Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)</b></li></ul> <p>Select <b>Properties</b></p> 	<p><b>Windows 7</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Go to <b>Control Panel</b>.</li><li>• Double-click on <b>Network and Sharing Center</b></li><li>• Select <b>Change Adapter Settings</b> (left menu)</li><li>• Right-click the <b>Local Area Connection</b> icon and select <b>Properties</b></li></ul> <p>Select <b>Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4)</b></p> 

## Appendix B 1 Connecting to the TVOE iLO

2	<p><input type="checkbox"/> Click <b>Use the following IP address</b></p> <p>Set the <b>IP address</b> to 192.168.100.100</p> <p>Set the <b>Subnet mask</b> to 255.255.255.0</p> <p>Set the <b>Default gateway</b> to 192.168.100.1</p> <p>Select <b>OK</b>.</p> <p>Select <b>Close</b> from the network interface card's main <b>Properties</b> screen.</p>		
3	<p><input type="checkbox"/> Connect the laptop's Ethernet port directly to the TVOE iLO port using a standard Cat-5 cross-over cable.</p>		<p>Connect the laptop's</p> <p>ILO</p>

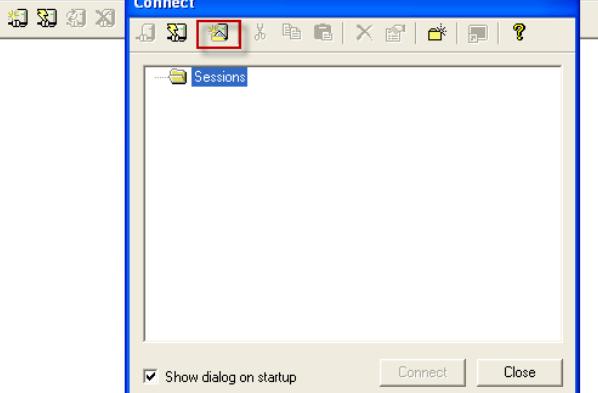
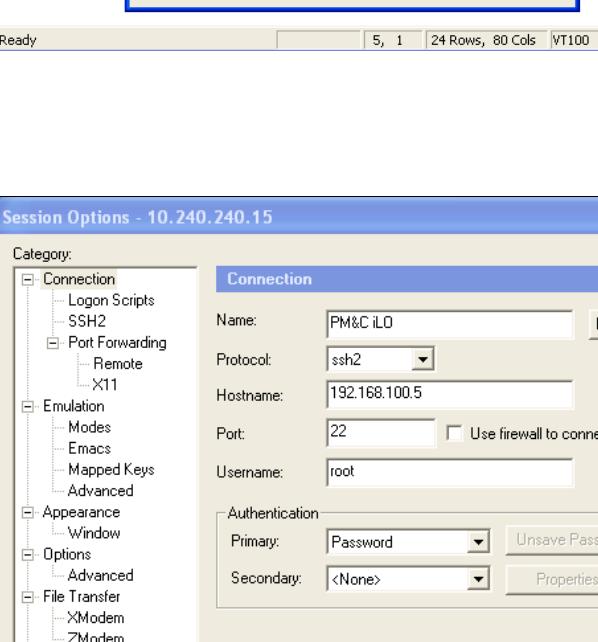
## Appendix C: TVOE iLO Access

## Appendix C 1 Accessing the TVOE iLO

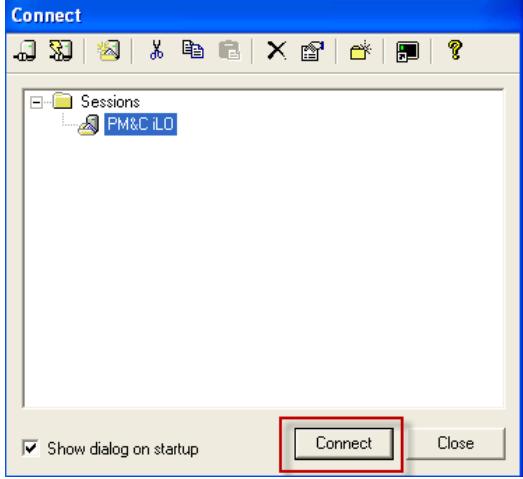
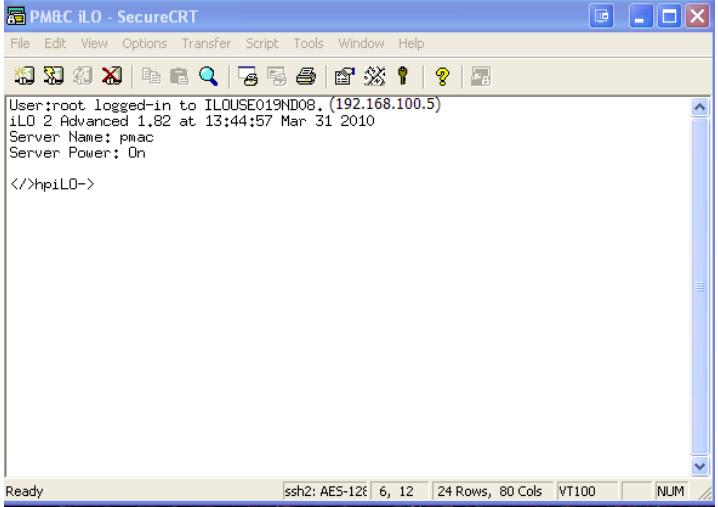
This procedure contains the steps to access the TVOE iLO.

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

If this procedure fails, contact **Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)**, and ask for assistance.

STEP #	Procedure	Result
1	<p>Launch a terminal emulator, e.g. Putty, Secure CRT.</p> <p> Navigate to <b>File -&gt; Connect</b></p> <p> Click on the <b>New Session</b> icon.</p>	
2	<p>Enter TVOE iLO for <b>Name</b> 192.168.100.5 (Manufacturing default) or customer IP set during installation for <b>Hostname</b>.</p> <p>Enter admusr for <b>Username</b>.</p> <p>Click <b>OK</b></p> <p><b>Note:</b> See Appendix B: Configuring for TVOE iLO Access to configure your system network to access the TVOE iLO.</p>	

## Appendix C 1 Accessing the TVOE iLO

3 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Navigate <b>File -&gt; Connect</b> to open the Connect window.</p> <p>Highlight the session you created and click <b>Connect</b>.</p>	
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>Login</b> to the TVOE iLO using the appropriate password.</p>	
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>The TVOE iLO is displayed.</p>	

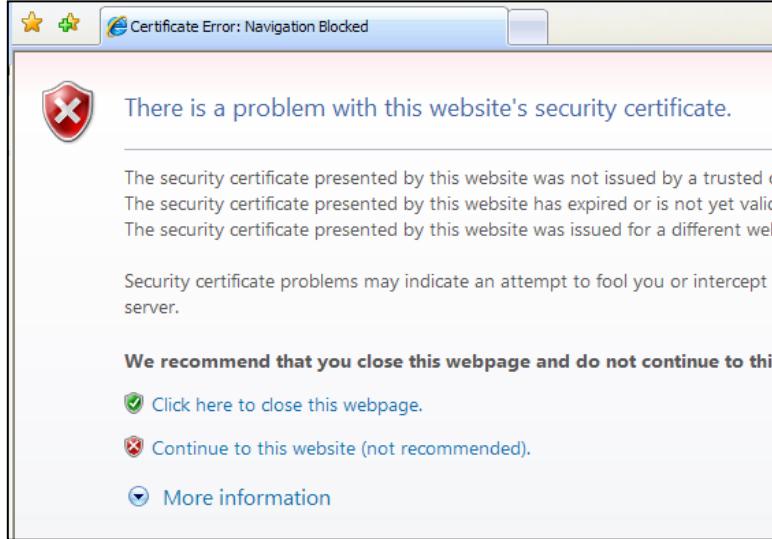
## Appendix D: TVOE iLO4 Access

### Appendix D 1 TVOE iLO4 GUI Access

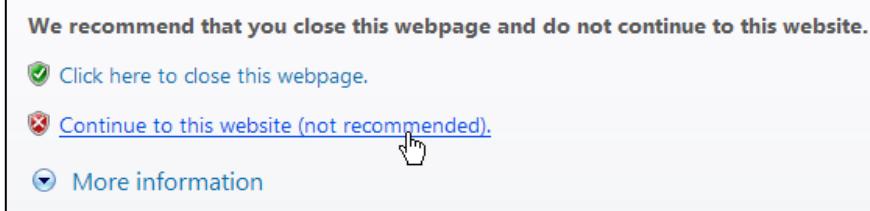
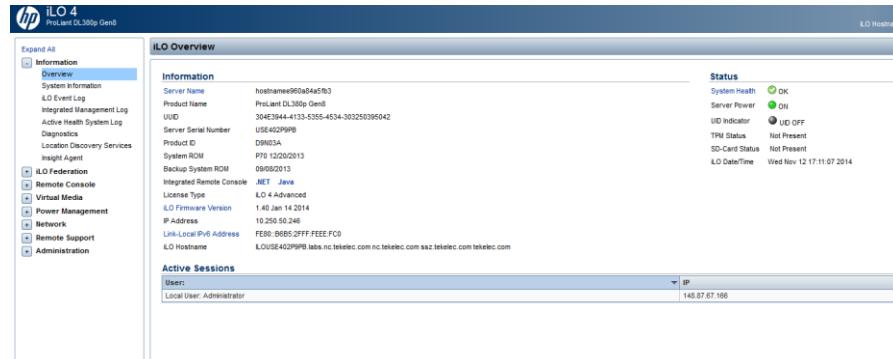
This procedure contains the steps to access the TVOE iLO4 GUI.

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

If this procedure fails, contact **Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)**, and ask for assistance.

STEP #	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Launch Internet Explorer</b>  Navigate to 192.168.100.5 (manufacturing default) or customer IP set during installation.	
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Internet Explorer may display a warning message regarding the Security Certificate.	

## Appendix D 1 TVOE iLO4 GUI Access

<p>3</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Select the option to <b>Continue to the website (not recommended)</b></p>	
<p>4</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Log in to the iLO4</p>	
<p>5</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>The iLO4 Home page is displayed.</p>	
<p>6</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Click on <b>Launch</b> to start the PMAC iLO4 CLI</p>	

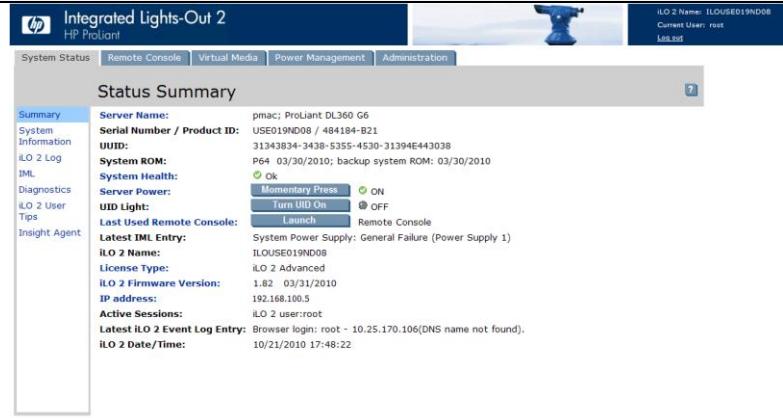
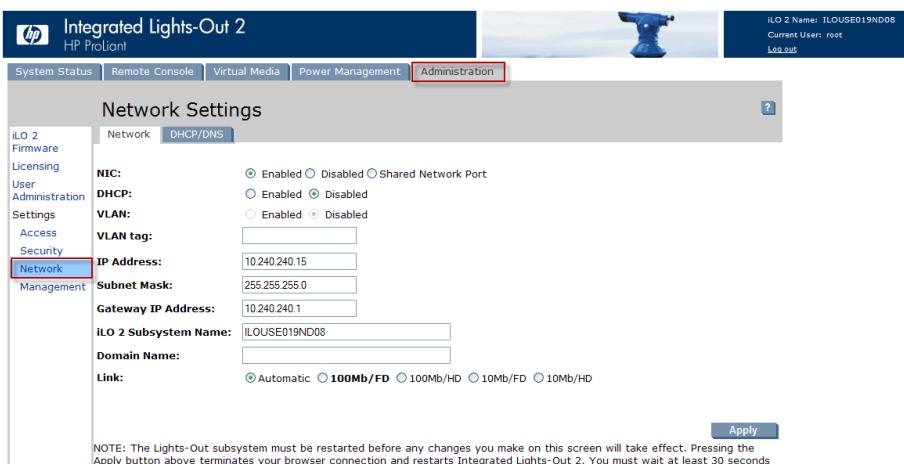
## Appendix E: Changing the TVOE iLO Address

### Appendix E 1 Changing the TVOE iLO Address

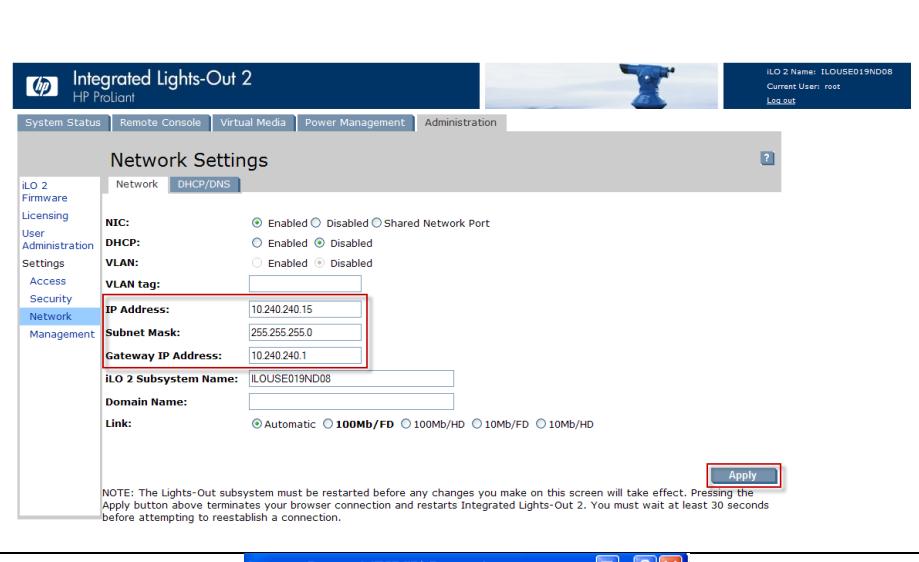
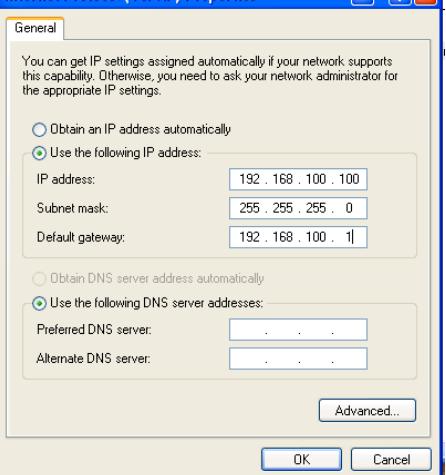
This procedure will set the IP address of the TVOE iLO to the customer's network so that it can be accessed by Oracle support.

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

If this procedure fails, contact **Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)**, and ask for assistance.

STEP #	Procedure	Result
1 □	Connect to the TVOE iLO GUI using the instructions in <b>Appendix D: TVOE iLO4 Access</b>	
2 □	Click the <b>Administration</b> tab. Under <b>Settings</b> in the left column click on <b>Network</b> .	

## Appendix E 1 Changing the TVOE iLO Address

<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Change the <b>IP Address</b>, <b>Subnet Mask</b> and <b>Gateway IP Address</b> to the values supplied in the IP Site Survey for the TVOE iLO.</p> <p>Select <b>Apply</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You will lose access after you hit the <b>Apply</b> button.</p>	
<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Reset the PC's network connection replacing the <b>Subnet Mask</b> and <b>Gateway</b> with those just used for the TVOE iLO. Use an appropriate <b>IP address</b> for this subnet.</p>	
<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Connect to the TVOE iLO GUI using the instructions in <b>Appendix D: TVOE iLO4 Access</b></p> <p><b>Note:</b> Use the IP address entered in <b>Step 3</b></p>	

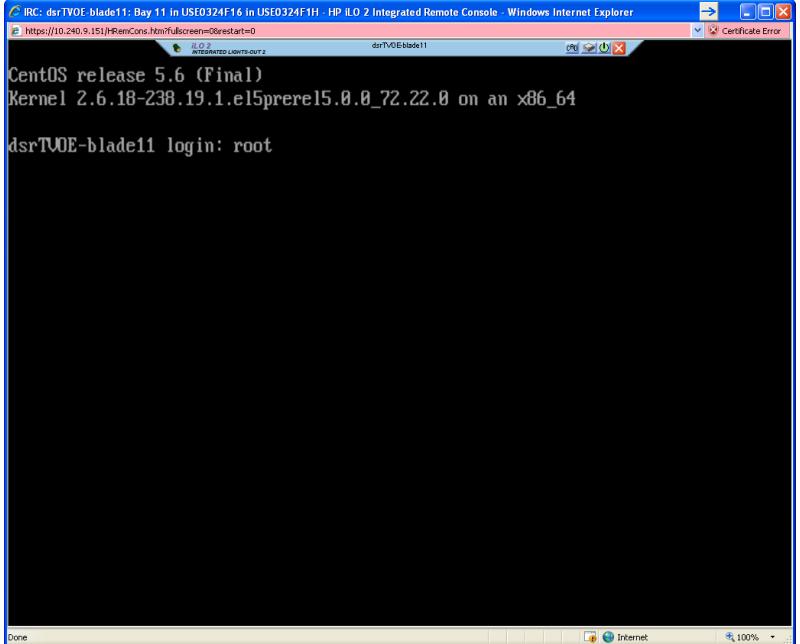
## Appendix F: PMAC/NOAM/SOAM Console iLO Access

### Appendix F 1 PMAC/NOAM/SOAM Console iLO Access

This procedure describes how to log into the PMAC/NOAM/SOAM console from iLO.

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

If this procedure fails, contact **Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)**, and ask for assistance.

STEP #	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Log in as <b>admusr</b> on the TVOE server hosting the NOAM using either ILO or SSH to the TVOE server's XMI or Mgmt. address	

## Appendix F 1 PMAC/NOAM/SOAM Console iLO Access

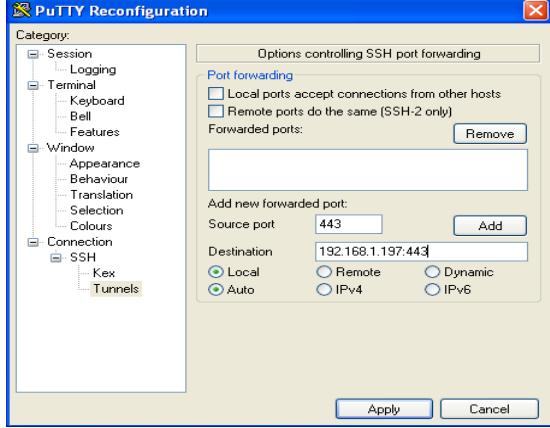
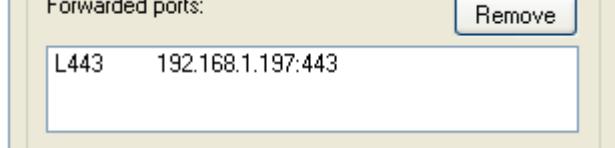
2		<p>On the TVOE host, execute the following command:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$sudo virsh list</pre> </div> <p>This will produce a listing of currently running virtual machines.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>[root@dsrTVOE-blade11 ~]# virsh list   Id  Name           State   ----   4  DSR_NOAMP     running [root@dsrTVOE-blade11 ~]# _</pre> </div> <p>Find the VM name for your DSR NOAM and note its ID number in the first column.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If the VM state is not listed as “running” or you do not find a VM you configured for your NOAM at all, then halt this procedure and contact Oracle Customer Support.</p>
3	<input type="checkbox"/> Connect to console of the VM using the VM number obtained in Step 2.	<p>On the TVOE host, execute::</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$sudo virsh console &lt;DSRNOAM-VMID&gt;</pre> </div> <p>Where <b>DSRNOAM-VMID</b> is the VM ID you obtained in <b>Step 2</b>:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>Connected to domain DSR_NOAMP Escape character is ^]  CentOS release 5.6 (Final) Kernel 2.6.18-238.19.1.el5prere15.0.0_72.22.0 on an x86_64  hostname1322840832 login: _</pre> </div> <p>You are now connected to the DSR NOAMs console.</p> <p>If you wish to return to the TVOE host, you can exit the session by pressing <b>CTRL + ]</b></p>

## Appendix G: Accessing the NOAM GUI using SSH Tunneling with Putty

### Appendix G 1 Accessing the NOAM GUI using SSH Tunneling with Putty

S	<b>Note:</b> This procedure assumes that the NOAM server you wish to create a tunnel to has been IPM'd with the DSR application ISO	
T	<b>Note:</b> This procedure assumes that you have exchanged SSH keys between the PMAC and the first NOAM server.	
E	<b>Note:</b> This procedure assumes that you have obtained the control network IP address for the first NOAM server. You can get this from the PMAC GUI's Software Inventory screen.	
P	That variable will be referred to as <NOAM-Control-IP> in these instructions.	
#	<b>Note:</b> It is recommended that you only use this procedure if you are using Windows XP. There are known issues with putty and Windows 7 that may cause unpredictable results when viewing GUI screens through SSH tunnels.	
	Check off (/) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.	
	If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.	
1	<input type="checkbox"/> Log in to PMAC Server using PuTTY	Launch the PuTTY application from your station and open a session to the PMAC's management address. Login as <b>admusr</b>

## Appendix G 1 Accessing the NOAM GUI using SSH Tunneling with Putty

2 <input type="checkbox"/> Create SSH Tunnel through the PMAC in PuTTY	<p>New Session... Duplicate Session Saved Sessions <b>Change Settings...</b></p> <p><i>Conv All to Clinhnard</i></p> <p>Click the icon in the upper left hand corner of the PuTTY window to bring down the <b>main menu</b>.</p> <p>Select <b>Change Settings</b> Select <b>Connections -&gt; SSH -&gt; Tunnels</b></p>  <p>Verify that the <b>“Local”</b> and <b>“Auto”</b> buttons are selected. Leave other fields blank</p> <p>In <b>Source Port</b>, enter <b>443</b></p> <p>In <b>Destination</b>, enter <b>&lt;NOAM-Control-IP&gt;:443</b></p> <p>Click <b>Add</b></p>  <p>You should now see a display similar to the following in the text box at the center of this dialog.</p> <p>Click <b>Apply</b></p> <p>Now establish the SSH session to the PMAC, login as <b>admusr</b></p>
------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Appendix G 1 Accessing the NOAM GUI using SSH Tunneling with Putty

3	<p><input type="checkbox"/> Use Local Web Browser to <b>Connect</b> to GUI</p>	<p>Using your web browser, navigate to the following URL:</p> <p><b><a href="https://localhost/">https://localhost/</a></b></p>  <p>You should arrive at the login screen for the NOAM GUI.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If using windows 7 and a blank screen is displayed, enable <b>Compatibility Mode</b> in IE, or use a different browser (Firefox or Chrome)</p>
---	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Appendix H: Accessing the NOAM GUI using SSH Tunneling with OpenSSH for Windows

### Appendix H 1 Accessing the NOAM GUI using SSH Tunneling with OpenSSH for Windows

S T E P #	<p><b>Note:</b> This procedure assumes that the NOAMP server you wish to create a tunnel to has been IPM'd with the DSR application ISO</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This procedure assumes that you have exchanged SSH keys between the PMAC and the first NOAMP server.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This procedure assumes that you have obtained the control network IP address for the first NOAMP server. You can get this from the PMAC GUI's Software Inventory screen. That variable will be referred to as &lt;NOAM-Control-IP&gt; in these instructions.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This is the recommended tunneling method if you are using Windows 7.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>If Needed, Download and Install <b>OpenSSH for Windows</b> from <a href="#">here</a>.</p> <p>Extract the installer from the ZIP file, then run the installer. <b>openssh</b> is now installed on your PC.</p>
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p><b>Create SSH Tunnel Through the PMAC</b></p> <p>Open up a Command Prompt shell</p> <p>Within the command shell, enter the following to create the SSH tunnel to the 1st NO, through the PMAC:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"><pre>&gt; ssh -L 443:&lt;1st_NO_Control_IP_Address&gt;:443 admusr@&lt;PMAC_Management_IP_Address&gt;</pre></div> <p>(Answer <b>Yes</b> if it asks if you want to continue connecting)</p> <div style="background-color: black; color: white; padding: 10px; border: 1px solid black;"><pre>C:\&gt;ssh -L 443:192.168.1.14:443 root@10.240.9.132 The authenticity of host '10.240.9.132 (10.240.9.132)' can't be established. RSA key fingerprint is e0:f5:2c:bf:70:d9:a6:fd:42:74:83:09:a0:7a:da:0c. Are you sure you want to continue connecting (yes/no)? yes Warning: Permanently added '10.240.9.132' (RSA) to the list of known hosts. root@10.240.9.132's password: Last login: Sat Mar 23 09:28:00 2013 from 10.26.15.162 [root@pmac-90006 ~]#</pre></div> <p>The tunnel to the 1<sup>st</sup> NOAM is now established.</p>

## Appendix H 1 Accessing the NOAM GUI using SSH Tunneling with OpenSSH for Windows

3	<p><input type="checkbox"/> Use Local Web Browser to Connect to GUI</p>	<p>Using your web browser, navigate to the following URL:</p> <p><b>https://localhost/</b></p>  <p>You should arrive at the login screen for the NOAM GUI.</p>
---	-------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Appendix I: List of Frequently used Time Zones

Table 4 Time Zones

Time Zone Value	Description	Universal Time Code (UTC) Offset
America/New_York	Eastern Time	UTC-05
America/Chicago	Central Time	UTC-06
America/Denver	Mountain Time	UTC-07
America/Phoenix	Mountain Standard Time - Arizona	UTC-07
America/Los_Angeles	Pacific Time	UTC-08
America/Anchorage	Alaska Time	UTC-09
Pacific/Honolulu	Hawaii	UTC-10
Africa/Johannesburg		UTC+02
America/Mexico_City	Central Time - most locations	UTC-06
Africa/Monrovia		UTC+00
Asia/Tokyo		UTC+09
America/Jamaica		UTC-05
Europe/Rome		UTC+01
Asia/Hong_Kong		UTC+08
Pacific/Guam		UTC+10
Europe/Athens		UTC+02
Europe/London		UTC+00
Europe/Paris		UTC+01
Europe/Madrid	mainland	UTC+01
Africa/Cairo		UTC+02
Europe/Copenhagen		UTC+01
Europe/Berlin		UTC+01
Europe/Prague		UTC+01
America/Vancouver	Pacific Time - west British Columbia	UTC-08
America/Edmonton	Mountain Time - Alberta, east British Columbia & west Saskatchewan	UTC-07
America/Toronto	Eastern Time - Ontario - most locations	UTC-05
America/Montreal	Eastern Time - Quebec - most locations	UTC-05
America/Sao_Paulo	South & Southeast Brazil	UTC-03
Europe/Brussels		UTC+01
Australia/Perth	Western Australia - most locations	UTC+08
Australia/Sydney	New South Wales - most locations	UTC+10
Asia/Seoul		UTC+09
Africa/Lagos		UTC+01
Europe/Warsaw		UTC+01
America/Puerto_Rico		UTC-04
Europe/Moscow	Moscow+00 - west Russia	UTC+04
Asia/Manila		UTC+08
Atlantic/Reykjavik		UTC+00
Asia/Jerusalem		UTC+02

## Appendix J: Application NetBackup Client Installation Procedures

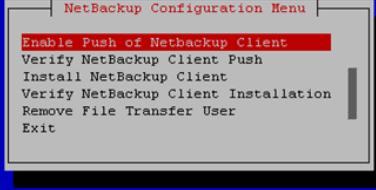
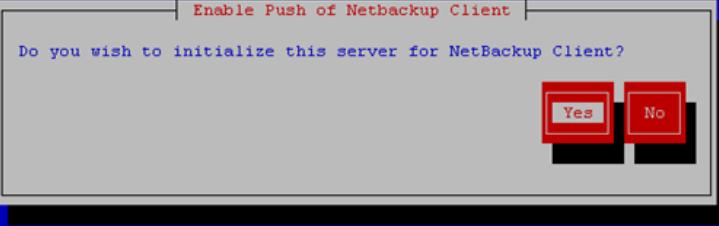
NetBackup is a utility that allows for management of backups and recovery of remote systems. The NetBackup suite is for the purpose of supporting Disaster Recovery at the customer site. The following procedures provides instructions for installing and configuring the NetBackup client software on an application server in two different ways, first using platcfg and second using nbAutoInstall (push Configuration)

### NETBACKUP CLIENT INSTALL USING PLATCFG

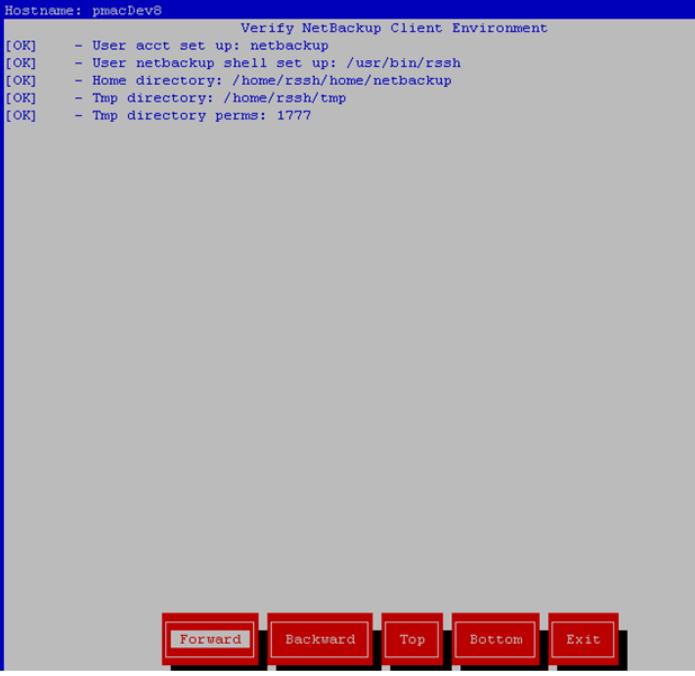
#### Appendix J 1 Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)

<b>S</b>	This procedure explains the Netbackup installation using platcfg	
<b>T</b>	<b>Prerequisites:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Application server platform installation has been completed.</li><li>Site survey has been performed to determine the network requirements for the application server, and interfaces have been configured.</li><li>NetBackup server is available to copy, sftp, the appropriate NetBackup Client software to the application server.</li><li>Execute Appendix A.3 of [26] (DSR 7.1) [3] (DSR 7.0)</li></ul>	
<b>E</b>	<b>Note:</b> Execute the following procedure to switch/migrate to having netBackup installed via platcfg instead of using NBAutoInstall ( <i>Push Configuration</i> )	
<b>P</b>	Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.	
<b>#</b>	If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.	
1	<b>Application server iLO:</b> Login	Login and launch the integrated remote console SSH to the application Server (PMAC or NOAM) as <b>admusr</b> using the management network for the PMAC or XMI network for the NOAM.

## Appendix J 1 Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)

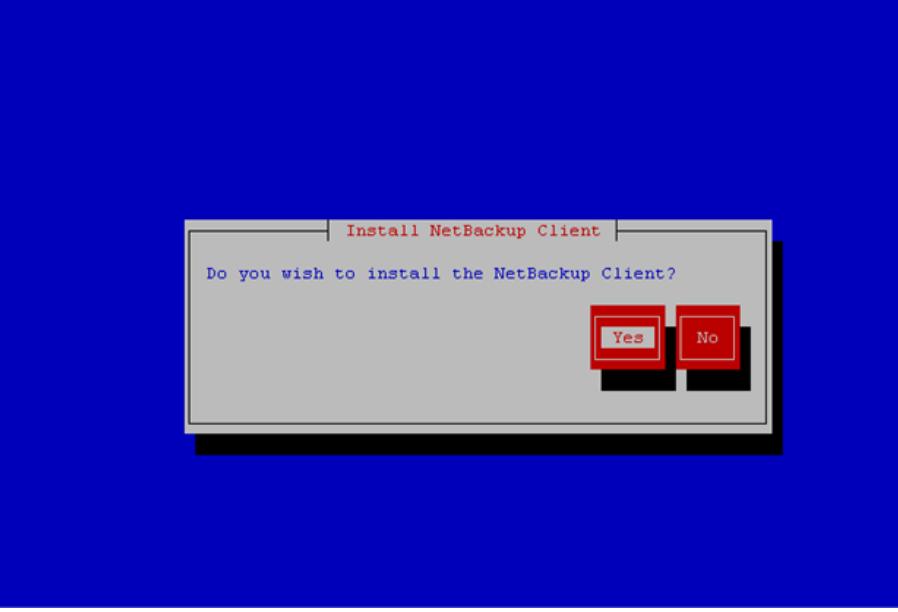
2	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Application server iLO:</b> Navigate to NetBackup Configuration</p>	<p>Configure NetBackup Client on application server</p> <pre>\$ sudo su - platcfg</pre> <p><b>Navigate to NetBackup -&gt; Configuration</b></p> <p>Platform Configuration Utility 3.05 (C) 2003 - 2011 Tekelec, Inc. Hostname: pmacDev8</p> 
3	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Application server iLO:</b> Enable Push of NetBackup Client</p>	<p>Navigate to NetBackup Configuration -&gt; Enable Push of NetBackup Client</p> <p>Platform Configuration Utility 3.05 (C) 2003 - 2011 Tekelec, Inc. Hostname: pmacDev8</p> 

## Appendix J 1 Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)

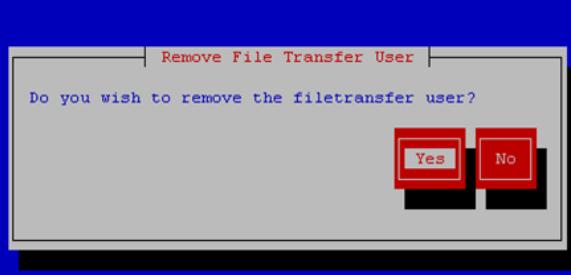
4	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Application server iLO:</b> Verify NetBackup Client software push is enabled.</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>NetBackup Configuration</b> -&gt; <b>Verify NetBackup Client Push</b></p>  <pre>Platform Configuration Utility 3.05 (C) 2003 - 2011 Tekelec, Inc. Hostname: pmacDev6 Verify NetBackup Client Environment [OK] - User acct set up: netbackup [OK] - User netbackup shell set up: /usr/bin/rssh [OK] - Home directory: /home/rssh/home/netbackup [OK] - Tmp directory: /home/rssh/tmp [OK] - Tmp directory perms: 1777</pre> <p>Verify list entries indicate <b>OK</b> for NetBackup client software environment. Select <b>Exit</b> to return to NetBackup Configuration menu.</p>
---	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Appendix J 1 Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)

## Appendix J 1 Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)

6	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Application server iLO:</b> Install NetBackup Client software on application server.</p>	<p>Execute the command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo chmod 555 /var/TKLC/home/rssh/tmp/client_config</pre> <p>Where <b>NETBACKUP_BIN</b> is the temporary directory where the netbackup client install programs were copied in <b>step 5</b>. The directory should look similar to the following: "/tmp/bp.XXXX/"</p> <p>Navigate to <b>NetBackup Configuration -&gt; Install NetBackup Client</b></p>  <p>Verify list entries indicate <b>OK</b> for NetBackup client software installation</p> <p>Select <b>Exit</b> to return to NetBackup Configuration menu</p>
---	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Appendix J 1 Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)

7	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Application server iLO:</b> Verify NetBackup Client software installation on the application server.</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>NetBackup Configuration -&gt; Verify NetBackup Client Installation.</b></p>  <p>Verify list entries indicate <b>OK</b> for NetBackup Client software installation. Select <b>Exit</b> to return to NetBackup Configuration menu.</p>
8	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Application server iLO:</b> Disable NetBackup Client software transfer to the application server.</p>	<p>Navigate to <b>NetBackup Configuration -&gt; Remove File Transfer User</b></p>  <p>Select <b>Yes</b> to remove the NetBackup file transfer user from the application server</p>
9	<p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Application server iLO:</b> Exit platform configuration utility (platcfg)</p>	

## Appendix J 1 Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)

10	<p><b>Application server iLO:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Use platform configuration utility (platcfg) to modify hosts file with NetBackup server alias.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> After the successful transfer and installation of the NetBackup client software the NetBackup servers hostname can be found in the NetBackup "/usr/openv/netbackup/bp.conf" file, identified by the <b>SERVER</b> configuration parameter.</p> <p>The NetBackup server hostname and IP address must be added to the application server's host's file. List NetBackup servers hostname:</p> <pre>\$ sudo cat /usr/openv/netbackup/bp.conf SERVER = nb70server CLIENT_NAME = pmacDev8</pre> <p>Use platform configuration utility (platcfg) to update application hosts file with NetBackup Server alias.</p> <pre>\$ sudo su - platcfg</pre> <p><b>Configure Hosts</b></p> <p>Address Aliases</p> <table border="1"> <tr><td>127.0.0.1</td><td>localhost pmacDev8 smacweb</td></tr> <tr><td>::1</td><td>localhost6.localdomain6 localhost6</td></tr> <tr><td>192.168.1.101</td><td>server_ppp0</td></tr> <tr><td>192.168.1.102</td><td>client_ppp0</td></tr> <tr><td>192.168.1.103</td><td>server_ppp1</td></tr> <tr><td>192.168.1.104</td><td>client_ppp1</td></tr> <tr><td>192.168.176.1</td><td>ntpserver1</td></tr> <tr><td>192.168.176.45</td><td>nb70server</td></tr> </table> <p>Select <b>Edit</b>, the <b>Host Action Menu</b> will be displayed.</p> <p><b>Host Action Menu</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Add Host</li> <li>Delete Host</li> <li>Add Alias</li> <li>Edit Alias</li> <li>Delete Alias</li> <li>Exit</li> </ul> <p>Select <b>Add Host</b>, and enter the appropriate data</p> <p><b>Add Host</b></p> <p>IP Address: <input type="text" value="192.168.1.101"/>  Initial alias: <input type="text" value="nb70server"/></p> <p><b>OK</b> <b>Cancel</b></p> <p>Select <b>OK</b>, confirm the host alias add, and exit Platform Configuration Utility</p>	127.0.0.1	localhost pmacDev8 smacweb	::1	localhost6.localdomain6 localhost6	192.168.1.101	server_ppp0	192.168.1.102	client_ppp0	192.168.1.103	server_ppp1	192.168.1.104	client_ppp1	192.168.176.1	ntpserver1	192.168.176.45	nb70server
127.0.0.1	localhost pmacDev8 smacweb																	
::1	localhost6.localdomain6 localhost6																	
192.168.1.101	server_ppp0																	
192.168.1.102	client_ppp0																	
192.168.1.103	server_ppp1																	
192.168.1.104	client_ppp1																	
192.168.176.1	ntpserver1																	
192.168.176.45	nb70server																	

## Appendix J 1 Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)

11	<b>Application server iLO:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Create links to NetBackup client notify scripts on application server where NetBackup expects to find them.	Copy the notify scripts from appropriate path on application server for given application: <pre>\$ sudo ln -s &lt;path&gt;/bpstart_notify /usr/openv/netbackup/bin/bpstart_notify  \$ sudo ln -s &lt;path&gt;/bpnd_notify /usr/openv/netbackup/bin/bpnd_notify</pre> An example of <path> is "/usr/TKLC/appworks/sbin"
----	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## NETBACKUP CLIENT INSTALL/UPGRADE WITH NBAUTOINSTALL

**Note:** Execute the following procedure to switch/migrate to having netBackup installed via NBAutoInstall (*Push Configuration*) instead of manual installation using platcfg

**Note:** Executing this procedure will enable TPD to automatically detect when a Netbackup Client is installed and then complete TPD related tasks that are needed for effective Netbackup Client operation. With this procedure, the Netbackup Client install (pushing the client and performing the install) is the responsibility of the customer and is not covered in this procedure.

## Appendix J 2 Application NetBackup Client Installation (NBAUTOINSTALL)

S	This procedure explains the Netbackup installation with NBAUTOINSTALL	
T		
E	<b>Prerequisites:</b>	
P	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Application server platform installation has been completed.</li> <li>Site survey has been performed to determine the network requirements for the application server, and interfaces have been configured.</li> <li>NetBackup server is available to copy, sftp, the appropriate NetBackup Client software to the application server.</li> </ul>	
#	<p><b>Note:</b> If the customer does not have a way to push and install Netbackup Client, then use Netbackup Client Install/Upgrade with platcfg.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It is required that this procedure is executed before the customer does the Netbackup Client install.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b>, and ask for assistance.</p>	
1	<b>Application server iLO:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Login	Login and launch the integrated remote console. SSH to the application Server (PMAC or NOAM) as <b>admusr</b> using the management network for the PMAC or XMI network for the NOAM.

## Appendix J 2 Application NetBackup Client Installation (NBAUTOINSTALL)

2	<b>Application server iLO:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable nbAutoInstall	Execute the following command: <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/nbAutoInstall --enable</pre> </div>
3	<b>Application server iLO:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Create links to NetBackup client notify scripts on application server where NetBackup expects to find them.	Execute the following commands <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$ sudo mkdir -p /usr/openv/netbackup/bin/ \$ sudo ln -s &lt;path&gt;/bpstart_notify /usr/openv/netbackup/bin/bpstart_notify  \$ sudo ln -s &lt;path&gt;/bpnd_notify /usr/openv/netbackup/bin/bpnd_notify</pre> </div> <p>Note: An example of &lt;path&gt; is "/usr/TKLC/plat/sbin"</p>
4	<b>Application server iLO:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Verify NetBackup configuration file	Open <b>/usr/openv/netbackup/bp.conf</b> and make sure it points to the NetBackup Server using the following command: <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$ sudo vi /usr/openv/netbackup/bp.conf</pre> </div> <pre>SERVER = nb75server CLIENT_NAME = 10.240.10.185 CONNECT_OPTIONS = localhost 1 0 2</pre> <p><b>Note:</b> Verify that the above server name matches the NetBackup Server, and verify that the CLIENT_NAME matches the hostname or IP of the local client machine, if they do not, update them as necessary.</p> <p>Edit <b>/etc/hosts</b> using the following command and add the NetBackup server:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$ sudo vi /etc/hosts e.g.: 192.168.176.45 nb75server</pre> </div> <p><b>Note:</b> The server will now periodically check to see if a new version of Netbackup Client has been installed and will perform necessary TPD configuration accordingly.</p> <p>At any time, the customer may now push and install a new version of Netbackup Client.</p>

## CREATE NETBACKUP CLIENT CONFIG FILE

This procedure will copy a NetBackup Client config file into the appropriate location on the TPD based application server. This config file will allow a customer to install previously unsupported versions of NetBackup Client by providing necessary information to TPD.

### Appendix J 3 Create NetBackup Client Config File

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will copy a NetBackup Client config file into the appropriate location on the TPD based application server. This config file will allow a customer to install previously unsupported versions of NetBackup Client by providing necessary information to TPD.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle</b> Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Application server iLO:</b> Create NetBackup Config File	<p>Create the NetBackup Client config file on the server using the contents that were previously determined. The config file should be placed in the <code>/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/netbackup/profiles</code> directory and should follow the following naming conventions:</p> <p><code>NB\$ver.conf</code></p> <p>Where \$ver is the client version number with the periods removed. For the 7.5 client the value of \$ver would be 75 and the full path to the file would be:</p> <p><code>/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/netbackup/profiles/NB75.conf</code></p> <p><b>Note:</b> The config files must start with "NB" and must have a suffix of ".conf". The server is now capable of installing the corresponding NetBackup Client.</p> <p>The server is now capable of installing the corresponding NetBackup Client.</p>

### Appendix J 3 Create NetBackup Client Config File

2	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Application server iLO:</b> Create NetBackup Config script	<p>Create the NetBackup Client config script file on the server using the contents that were previously determined. The config script file should be placed in the <code>/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/netbackup/scripts</code> directory. The name of the NetBackup Client config script file should be determined from the contents of the NetBackup Client config file.</p> <p>As an example for the NetBackup 7.5 client the following is applicable:</p> <p><u>NetBackup Client config:</u> <code>/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/netbackup/profiles/NB75.conf</code></p> <p><u>NetBackup Client config script:</u> <code>/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/netbackup/scripts/NB75</code></p> <p>Note: Change the client config and script permission by executing the following command:</p> <p>Illustrative purposes only:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"><pre>\$ sudo chmod 555 /usr/TKLC/plat/etc/netbackup/profiles/NB75.conf  \$ sudo chmod 55 /usr/TKLC/plat/etc/netbackup/scripts/NB75</pre></div>
---	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## OPEN PORTS FOR NETBACKUP CLIENT SOFTWARE

This procedure will use iptables and ip6tables (if applicable) to open the applicable ports for the NetBackup client to communicate to the NetBackup Server.

### Appendix J 4 Open ports for NetBackup Client Software

<b>S</b>	This procedure will use iptables and ip6tables (if applicable) to open the applicable ports for the NetBackup client to communicate to the NetBackup Server.	
<b>T</b>	Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.	
<b>E</b>	If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.	
<b>P</b>		
#	<b>1</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Active NOAM Server:</b> Login	Establish an SSH session to the active NOAM server. Login as <b>admusr</b> .
2	<b>Active NOAM Server:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Open Ports for NetBackup Client Software	Change directories to <b>/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/iptables</b> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"><b>\$ cd /usr/TKLC/plat/etc/iptables</b></div> Using “vi”, create a file named <b>60netbackup.ipt</b> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"><b>\$ sudo vi 60netbackup.ipt</b></div> Insert the following contents into the file:  <pre># NetBackup ports. # *filter -A INPUT -m state --state NEW -m tcp -p tcp --dport 1556 -j ACCEPT -A INPUT -m state --state NEW -m tcp -p tcp --dport 13724 -j ACCEPT -A INPUT -m state --state NEW -m tcp -p tcp --dport 13782 -j ACCEPT</pre> Now save and close the file using ‘:wq’  <b>Note:</b> If system servers are to use IPv6 networks for NetBackup client-to-server communication, then repeat this procedure to create a file named <b>60netbackup.ip6t</b> , with the same contents as shown above, in the directory <b>/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/ip6tables</b> .
3	<b>Standby NOAM:</b> Open Ports for NetBackup Client Software	Repeat <b>Steps 1-2</b> for the standby NOAM to open ports for NetBackup client software.

## Appendix J 4 Open ports for NetBackup Client Software

4	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Active SOAM:</b> Open Ports for NetBackup Client Software	Repeat <b>Steps 1-2</b> for the active SOAM to open ports for NetBackup client software.
	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Standby SOAM:</b> Open Ports for NetBackup Client Software	Repeat <b>Steps 1-2</b> for the standby SOAM to open ports for NetBackup client software.

## Appendix K: Multi-Site Feature Activation (DSR 7.0)

### Appendix K 1 Mulit-Site Feature Activation (DSR 7.0)

<b>S</b>	This procedure will activate optional features in multi-site configurations for DR-NOAM and/or Spare SOAM servers.		
<b>T</b>	Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.		
<b>E</b>			
<b>P</b>			
<b>#</b>			
If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.			
1	<input type="checkbox"/> <b>DR-NOAM:</b> Feature Activation	<p>If the DR NOAM was configured in <b>Procedure 14</b>, SSH to the active DR-NOAM, login as <b>admusr</b>.</p> <p>Execute the following commands:</p> <p><b>FOR PCA:</b></p> <pre>\$ cd /usr/TKLC/dsr/prod/maint/loaders/activate \$ ./load.pcaActivateStandByAscoped</pre> <p><b>FOR MAP-DIAMETER IWF:</b></p> <pre>\$ cd /usr/TKLC/dsr/prod/maint/loaders/activate \$ ./load.mapinterworkingActivateAsourced</pre> <p>For MAP-Diameter, repeat this step for the standby DR-NOAM.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If a DR-NOAM is not configured, skip this step.</p>	

## Appendix K 1 Mult-Site Feature Activation (DSR 7.0)

2	<b>ACTIVE SOAM:</b> Prepare SOAM for optional feature activation	Establish an SSH session to the Active SOAM, login as <b>admusr</b> . Execute the following command:  <pre>\$ irem DsrApplication where "name in ('RBAR', 'FABR', 'PCA', 'MD-IWF', 'DM-IWF', 'CPA', 'GLA')"</pre>
3	<b>ACTIVE SOAM:</b> Verify preparation	Execute the following command to verify preparation of optional feature activation:  <pre>\$ iqt -z -h -p -fname DsrApplication where "name in ('RBAR', 'FABR', 'PCA', 'MD-IWF', 'DM-IWF', 'CPA', 'GLA')"</pre> <b>Note:</b> There should be no output of this command, if there is, verify the correct entry of the command in <b>step 2</b> .
4	<b>ACTIVE NOAM:</b> Activate Optional Features	Establish an SSH session to the Active NOAM, login as <b>admusr</b> . Execute the following command:  Follow references [2](DSR 7.0), [26] (DSR 7.1), [4], [5], [6], [7], [9] to activate any features that were previously activated.

## Appendix L: IDIH Fast Deployment Configuration

The fdc.cfg file contains 8 sections. The following is a list of those sections with a short description:

Section	Description
Software Images	A list of the TVOE, TPD, and iDIH application versions.
TVOE Blade	Contains the Enclosure ID, OA addresses, location, name and Hardware type of an HP Blade.
TVOE RMS	Includes Hardware Type and ILO address of the Rack Mount Server.
Type	Management or Standalone
TVOE Configuration	Contains all ip addresses, hostname and network devices for the TVOE host.
Guest Configurations (3)	The guest sections contain network and hostname configuration for the Oracle, Mediation and Application guests.

### Software Images

Be sure to update the software images section based on software versions you intend to install. The following table outlines typical installation failures caused by incorrect software versions. Use the "fdconfig dumpsteps -file=" command to produce output of a Fast Deployment Session.

Software Image	Element	Command Text
TVOE ISO	mgmtsrvrtvoe	IPM Server
TPD ISO	Oracle, tpd Mediation, tpd Application, tpd	IPM Server
iDIH Mediation ISO	Mgmtsrvrtvoe, configExt	Transfer File

iDIH Oracle ISO iDIH Mediation ISO iDIH Application ISO	Oracle,ora Mediation,med Application,app	Upgrade Server
---------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------	----------------

### **TVOE Blade**

The TVOE Blade section should be commented out if you intend to install a Rack Mount Server. Be sure to fill out the sections properly. Enclosure ID, OA IP addresses and the Bay must be correct or the PMAC will not be able to discover the blade. Hardware profiles are different for Gen8 and Gen6. Gen6 blades profiles have fewer CPU's and Ram allocated to the Guest.

### **TVOE RMS**

The TVOE RMS section should be commented out if you intend to install a TVOE Blade. It contains the ILO ip address and Hardware profile. If the ILO IP address is incorrect the PMAC will not be able to discover the Rack Mount Server, server discovery must occur before the installation can begin.

## **TYPE**

If your IDIH system is to be collocated with a PMAC on the same TVOE host make sure “Type=Management” is not commented out. It will setup a management network instead of an xmi network and it will remove the software stanza inside of the TVOE server stanza. If you are setting up a standalone IDIH then comment out “Type=Management” which will setup an xmi bridge.

## **TVOE CONFIGURATION**

This section defines the hostname, network ip addresses for the TVOE bridges and it defines the network devices. You can define the devices you intend to use for bonded interfaces and the tagged bonded interfaces you intend to associate with a bridge.

Execute “cat hw\_id” or hardwareInfo” command on TVOE host to get the hardware ID for the “Hw=” parameter. Note: For Gen9 (Hardware ID “ProLiantDL380Gen9”), please use Gen8’s Hardware ID (“ProLiantDL380pGen8”).

## **GUEST CONFIGURATION**

These sections contain the hostname, IPv4 addresses, IPv4 netmask, IPv4 gateway, and IPv6 addresses. If you do not intend to configure IPv6 addresses then leave those IP addresses commented out. The IPv6 netmask is included in the IPv6 address.

Below is FDC configuration template included on the mediation ISO:

```
# Software Images
TvoeIso="TVOE-3.0.1.0.0_86.20.0-x86_64"
TpIso="TPD.install-7.0_1.0.0_86.20.0-OracleLinux6.6-x86_64"
OraIso="oracle-7.1.0.0.0_71.14.0-x86_64"
MedIso="mediation-7.1.0.0.0_71.14.0-x86_64"
AppIso="apps-7.1.0.0.0_71.14.0-x86_64"

# Tvoe Blade OA IP and Bay uncomment if this server is blade #EncId="1401"
#Oa1="10.250.51.197"
#Oa2="10.250.51.198"
#Bay="15F"
#Hw="ProLiantBL460cGen8"
#Hw="ProLiantBL460cGen6"

# Tvoe RMS Out of Band Management IP and Hw # Comment these lines if server is blade OobIp="10.250.34.24"
Hw="ProLiantDL380pGen8"
#Hw="SUNNETRAX4270M3"

# Comment this line out if server is standalone Type="Management"

# Tvoe Config
#
TvoeName="thunderbolt"
TvoeIp="10.250.51.8"
Mask="255.255.255.0"
Gateway="10.250.51.1"
TvoeNtp="10.250.32.10"
TvoeIp6="2607:f0d0:1002:51::4/64"
TvoeIp6Gw="fe80::0"
# xmibond
XmiDev="bond0"
XmiEth="eth01,eth02"
# imibond
ImiDev="bond1"
ImiEth="eth03,eth04"
# xmi/management
MgmtInt="bond0.3"
MgmtIntType="Vlan"
MgmtIntVlanid="3"
# imi
ImiInt="bond1.5"
ImiIntType="Vlan"
ImiIntVlanid="5"

# Oracle Guest Config
OraName="thunderbolt-ora"
OraIp="10.250.51.6"
OraMask=$Mask
OraGw=$Gateway
OraIp6="2607:f0d0:1002:51::5/64"
OraIp6Gw="$TvoeIp6Gw"

# Mediation Guest Config
MedName="thunderbolt-med"
MedIp="10.250.51.10"
MedMask=$Mask
MedGw=$Gateway
ImiIp="192.168.32.11"
ImiMask="255.255.255.224"
MedIp6="2607:f0d0:1002:51::6/64"
MedIp6Gw="$TvoeIp6Gw"
ImiIp6="2608:f0d0:1002:51::6/64"

# Application Guest Config
AppName="thunderbolt-app"
AppIp="10.250.51.11"
AppMask=$Mask
AppGw=$Gateway
AppIp6="2607:f0d0:1002:51::7/64"
AppIp6Gw="$TvoeIp6Gw"
```

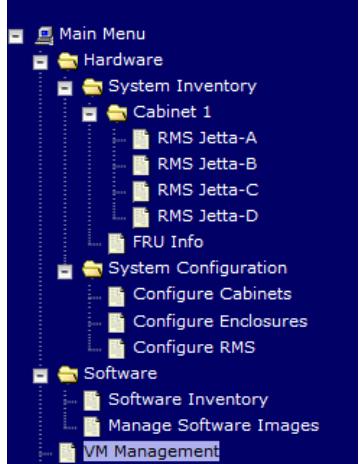
## Appendix M: IDIH External Drive Removal

This procedure should only be run if the user intends to do a fresh installation on an existing IDIH.

### Appendix M 1 IDIH External Drive Removal

<b>S</b>	This procedure will destroy all of the data in the Oracle Database.
<b>T</b>	Warning: Do not perform this procedure on an IDIH system unless you intent to do a fresh TVOE installation.
<b>E</b>	Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.
<b>P</b>	If this procedure fails, contact <b>Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)</b> , and ask for assistance.
<b>#</b>	
1	<p><b>PMAC GUI:</b> Login</p> <p>Open web browser and enter: <b><a href="https://&lt;PMAC_Mgmt_Network_IP&gt;">https://&lt;PMAC_Mgmt_Network_IP&gt;</a></b></p> <p>Login as <b>pmacadmin</b> user:</p> <p>ORACLE®</p> <p>Oracle System Login — Tue Mar 17 13:49:25 2015 UTC</p> <p>Log In Enter your username and password to log in</p> <p>Username: pmacadmin Password: *****</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Change password</p> <p>Log In</p> <p>Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0, 9.0, or 10.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies.</p> <p>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</p> <p>Copyright © 2010, 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</p>

## Appendix M 1 IDIH External Drive Removal

<input type="checkbox"/>	<b>2 PMAC GUI: Delete VMs if Needed</b>	<p>Before a re-installation can be performed, the IDIH VMs must be removed first.</p> <p>Navigate to <b>Main Menu -&gt; VM Management</b></p>  <p>Select each of the IDIH VMs and select the <b>Delete</b> button.</p> 
<input type="checkbox"/>	<b>3 IDIH TVOE HOST: Login</b>	<p>Establish an SSH session to the TVOE host, login as <b>admusr</b></p>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<b>4.1 IDIH TVOE HOST: Verify External Drive Exists for HP BL460 Blade</b>	<p>Execute the following command to verify the external drive exists for <b>HP BL460 Blade</b>:</p> <pre>\$ sudo hpssacli ctrl slot=3 ld all show</pre> <p>The following information should be displayed:</p> <pre>Smart Array P410i in Slot 3  array A  logicaldrive 1 (3.3 TB, RAID 1+0, OK)</pre>

## Appendix M 1 IDIH External Drive Removal

4.2	<b>IDIH TVOE</b> <b>HOST:</b> Verify External Drive Exists for <b>HP</b> <b>DL380 Gen8</b> <b>RMS</b>	<p>Execute the following command to verify the external drive exists for <b>HP DL380 Gen8 RMS</b>:</p> <pre>\$ sudo hpssacli ctrl slot=2 ld all show</pre> <p>The following information should be displayed:</p> <pre>Smart Array P420 in Slot 2 array A logicaldrive 1 (1.1 TB, RAID 1+0, OK)</pre>
4.3	<b>IDIH TVOE</b> <b>HOST:</b> Verify External Drive Exists for <b>Netra X3</b>	<p>Execute the following command to verify the external drive exists for <b>Netra X3</b>:</p> <pre>\$ sudo megacli -ldinfo -l1 -a0   head</pre> <p>The following information should be displayed:</p> <pre>Adapter 0 -- Virtual Drive Information: Virtual Drive: 1 (Target Id: 1) Name :  RAID Level : Primary-1, Secondary-0, RAID Level Qualifier-0 Size : 1.633 TB Mirror Data : 1.633 TB State : Optimal Strip Size : 64 KB</pre>
4.4	<b>IDIH TVOE</b> <b>HOST:</b> Verify External Drive Exists for <b>HP</b> <b>DL380 Gen9</b> <b>RMS</b>	<p>Execute the following command to verify the external drive exists for <b>HP DL380 Gen9 RMS</b>:</p> <pre>\$ hpssacli ctrl slot=0 ld all show</pre> <p>The following information should be displayed:</p> <pre>Smart Array P440ar in Slot 0 (Embedded) array A logicaldrive 1 (838.3 GB, RAID 1, OK)  array B logicaldrive 2 (838.3 GB, RAID 1, OK)  array C logicaldrive 3 (838.3 GB, RAID 1, OK)</pre>

## Appendix M 1 IDIH External Drive Removal

<input type="checkbox"/>	<b>IDIH TVOE HOST:</b> Remove the External Drive and Volume Group for <b>HP BL460 Blade</b>	<p>Execute the following command to remote the external drive and volume group for <b>HP BL460 Blade</b>:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean hpdisk --slot=3</pre> <p>The following information should be displayed:</p> <pre>Called with options: hpdisk --slot=3 WARNING: This will destroy all application data on the server! Continue? [Y/N]</pre>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<b>IDIH TVOE HOST:</b> Remove the External Drive and Volume Group for <b>HP DL380 Gen8 RMS</b>	<p>Execute the following command to remote the external drive and volume group for <b>HP DL380 Gen8 RMS</b>:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean hpdisk --slot=2</pre> <p>The following information should be displayed:</p> <pre>Called with options: hpdisk --slot=2 WARNING: This will destroy all application data on the server! Continue? [Y/N]</pre>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<b>IDIH TVOE HOST:</b> Remove the External Drive and Volume Group for <b>Netra X3 with one external disk</b>	<p>Execute the following command to remote the external drive and volume group for <b>Netra X3 with one external disk</b>:</p> <pre>\$ sudo vgs   VG      #PV #LV #SN Attr   VSize   VFree   external  1   1   0 wz--n-  1.63t  73.58g   vgguests  1   6   0 wz--n- 538.56g 138.56g   vgroot    1   6   0 wz--n- 19.00g   4.25g</pre> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean pool \ --poolName=external --level=pv \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean lvm \ --vgName=external --level=scrub \$ sudo megacli -cfglddel -11 -a0</pre>

## Appendix M 1 IDIH External Drive Removal

5.3.2	<b>IDIH TVOE HOST:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Remove the External Drive and Volume Group for <b>Netra X3 with three external disks</b>	<p>Execute the following command to remote the external drive and volume group for <b>Netra X3 with three external disks</b>:</p> <pre>\$ sudo vgs   VG      #PV #LV #SN Attr   VSize   VFree   external1  1   1   0 wz--n- 557.86g  24.86g   external2  1   1   0 wz--n- 557.86g  24.86g   external3  1   1   0 wz--n- 557.86g  24.86g   vgguests   1   6   0 wz--n- 538.56g 138.56g   vgroot     1   6   0 wz--n- 19.00g  4.25g  \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean pool \ --poolName=external3 --level=pv \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean pool \ --poolName=external2 --level=pv \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean pool \ --poolName=external1 --level=pv \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean lvm \ --vgName=external3 --level=scrub \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean lvm \ --vgName=external2 --level=scrub \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean lvm \ --vgName=external1 --level=scrub  [root@hellcat ~]# sudo megacli -cfglddel -13 -a0 [root@hellcat ~]# sudo megacli -cfglddel -12 -a0 [root@hellcat ~]# sudo megacli -cfglddel -11 -a0</pre>
5.4	<b>IDIH TVOE HOST:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Remove the External Drive and Volume Group for <b>HP DL380 Gen9 RMS</b>	<p>Execute the following command to remote the external drive and volume group for <b>HP DL380 Gen9 RMS</b>:</p> <pre>\$ /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean pool -- \ poolName=external2 --level=pv \$ /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean pool -- \ poolName=external1 --level=pv \$ /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean lvm -- \ vgName=external2 --level=scrub \$ /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean lvm -- \ vgName=external1 --level=scrub \$ hpssacli ctrl slot=0 ld 3 delete \$ hpssacli ctrl slot=0 ld 2 delete</pre>

## Appendix N: Disable/Enable DTLS

### **DSR 7.1 ONLY**

Oracle is introducing SCTP Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS) in DSR 7.1 by enabling SCTP AUTH extensions by default. SCTP AUTH extensions are required for SCTP DTLS. However, there are known impacts with SCTP AUTH extensions as covered by the CVEs referenced below. It is highly recommended that customers installing DSR 7.1 should prepare clients before the DSR connections are established after installation. This will ensure the DSR to Client SCTP connection will establish with SCTP AUTH extensions enabled. See RFC 6083. If customers DO NOT prepare clients to accommodate the DTLS changes, then the SCTP connections to client devices WILL NOT establish after the DSR is installed.

<https://access.redhat.com/security/cve/CVE-2015-1421>

<https://access.redhat.com/security/cve/CVE-2014-5077>

Execute procedures in [29] to disable/enable the DTLS feature.

## Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)

MOS (<https://support.oracle.com>) is your initial point of contact for all product support and training needs. A representative at Customer Access Support (CAS) can assist you with MOS registration.

Call the CAS main number at **1-800-223-1711** (toll-free in the US), or call the Oracle Support hotline for your local country from the list at <http://www.oracle.com/us/support/contact/index.html>.

When calling, there are multiple layers of menus selections. Make the selections in the sequence shown below on the Support telephone menu:

- 1) For the first set of menu options, select 2, "New Service Request". You will hear another set of menu options.
- 2) In this set of menu options, select 3, "Hardware, Networking and Solaris Operating System Support". A third set of menu options begins.
- 3) In the third set of options, select 2, "Non-technical issue". Then you will be connected to a live agent who can assist you with MOS registration and provide Support. Identifiers. Simply mention you are a Tekelec Customer new to MOS.